ISSN:2146-0957
eISSN:2146-5703

Volume:9 Number:1
January 2019

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications

www.ijocta.com

www.ijocta.com
info@ijocta.com

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications

Volume: 9, Number: 1

January 2019

Publisher & Owner *(Yayımcı & Sahibi)*:

Prof. Dr. Ramazan YAMAN
Istanbul Gelisim University, Faculty of Engineering and Architecture, Department of Industrial Engineering, Avcilar, Istanbul, Turkey
İstanbul Gelişim Üniversitesi, Mühendislik ve Mimarlık Fakültesi, Endüstri Mühendisliği Bölümü, Avcılar, İstanbul, Türkiye

ISSN: 2146-0957

eISSN: 2146-5703

Press *(Basımevi)*:

Bizim Dijital Matbaa (SAGE Publishing), Kazım Karabekir Street, Kültür Market, No:7 / 101-102, İskitler, Ankara, Turkey
Bizim Dijital Matbaa (SAGE Yayıncılık), Kazım Karabekir Caddesi, Kültür Çarşısı, No:7 / 101-102, İskitler, Ankara, Türkiye

Date Printed *(Basım Tarihi)*:

January 2019
Ocak 2019

Responsible Director (Sorumlu Müdür):

Prof. Dr. Ramazan YAMAN

IJOCTA is an international, bi-annual, and peer-reviewed journal indexed/ abstracted by *(IJOCTA, yılda iki kez yayımlanan ve aşağıdaki indekslerce taranan/dizinlenen uluslararası hakemli bir dergidir)*:
Cabell's Directories, DOAJ, EBSCO Databases, JournalSeek, Google Scholar, Index Copernicus, International Abstracts in Operations Research, JournalTOCs, Mathematical Reviews (MathSciNet), ProQuest, Scopus, Ulakbim Engineering and Basic Sciences Database (Tubitak), Ulrich's Periodical Directory, and Zentralblatt Math.

We Use Plagiarism Detection iThenticate Learn More »

iThenticate and ijocta.balikesir.edu.tr are granted by Balikesir University.

An International Journal of Optimization and Control:

Theories & Applications

Volume: 9 Number: 1

January 2019

CONTENTS

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.1-10 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00576

RESEARCH ARTICLE

Deployment in wireless sensor networks by parallel and cooperative parallel artificial bee colony algorithms

Selcuk Aslan

Department of Computer Engineering, Ondokuz Mayıs University, Samsun, Turkey
selcuk.aslan@omu.edu.tr

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 09 January 2018
Accepted 22 September 2018
Available 15 October 2018

Keywords:
Parallelization
ABC algorithm
Wireless sensor deployment

AMS Classification 2010:
65K10

ABSTRACT

Increasing number of cores in a processor chip and decreasing cost of distributed memory based system setup have led to emerge of a new work theme in which the main concern focused on the parallelization of the well-known algorithmic approaches for utilizing the computational power of the current architectures. In this study, the performances of the conventional parallel and cooperative model based parallel Artificial Bee Colony (ABC) algorithms on the deployment problem related to the wireless sensor networks were investigated. The results obtained from the experimental studies showed that parallelized ABC algorithm with the cooperative model is capable of finding similar or better coverage ratios with the increased convergence speeds than its serial counterpart and parallelized implementation in which the emigrant is chosen as the best food source in the current subcolony.

1. Introduction

Wireless sensor networks including hundreds or sometimes thousands of stationary or mobile nodes have been used various times for industrial or military projects [1, 2]. Each of the sensor nodes is capable of sending or receiving data packages and gathering information from the environment or objects being tracked. [1, 2]. However, sensor nodes have limited computing abilities and storage spaces, their detection ranges are restricted with properties of the sensing units and finally required power for sensing and communication is maintained by a small battery which can not be recharged or changed easily.

By considering all of these limitations and budget constraints, the configuration and settlement of a wireless sensor network should be made in order to maximize the life or utilization time of the network and the area of interest [1, 2]. The life time and successfully covered area of a wireless sensor network are directly related to the positions of the sensor nodes. If all the sensor nodes are deployed to the monitoring area in a straightforward manner that concerns the highest coverage ratio, the requirements for changing the positions of the mobile nodes by consuming extra energy from the internal battery decrease and the overall network life-time is substantially extended [1, 2]. With the increased understanding about the relationship between the positions of the sensors and efficiency of the network, studies on the deployment of sensor nodes have attracted the researchers and different approaches for solving the sensor deployment problem have been proposed.

When the studies about the sensor deployment problem are investigated, it is clearly seen that evolutionary computing techniques are commonly used. Bhondekar et al. used Genetic algorithm (GA) as a placement methodology of sensor nodes with different operating modes [3]. They tried to optimize a fitness function in which operational energy, number of unconnected sensors, number of overlapping cluster-in-charge, field coverage and number of sensors per cluster-in-charge are used as constraints. While the operational energy, number of unconnected sensors, number of overlapping cluster-in-charge constraints should be minimized, field coverage and number of sensors per cluster-in-charge constraints should be maximized [3]. Okay and Ozdemir analyzed the performances of the Multi-objective Evolutionary Algorithm based on Decomposition (MOEA/D) and Fast and Elitist Genetic Algorithm (NSGA-II) on optimization of sensing coverage area and total travel distances of the mobile nodes [4]. Obtained results from the experimental studies with 25 mobile sensors tracking 50 targets distributed to a $100m \times 100m$ area showed that NSGA-II is produced more robust deployments compared to MOEA/D in terms of tracked objects [4].

Li and Lei proposed a sensor deployment technique based on the Particle Swarm Optimization (PSO) algorithm called IPSO [5]. Distribution of 40 mobile sensors to a $80m \times 80m$ grid area with IPSO algorithm significantly improved the coverage ratio calculated with the probabilistic detection model compared to the Virtual Force (VF) algorithm [5]. One of the first studies about the using ABC algorithm as a sensor deployment technique has been carried out by Ugdata et al [6]. Ugdata et al. modeled sensor deployment problem as a data clustering problem and number of sensor nodes was used on behalf of clusters and locations of the sensor nodes were matched with the centroids of clusters [6]. Ozturk et al. investigated solving capabilities of the ABC algorithm for dynamic deployment problem of wireless networks with the two different studies [7, 8]. In the first study of them, ABC algorithm was used in order to maximize the coverage ratio of the network containing 100 mobile sensors [7, 8]. In the second study, they compared ABC algorithm with the PSO algorithm on solving a dynamic deployment scenario in which 20 mobile sensors are tried to be positioned at the suitable locations within a $10,000m^2$ square region [7, 8]. Results from the experimental studies showed that ABC algorithm is capable of producing more qualified solutions than the PSO algorithm. Yu et al. solved deployment problem by utilizing a modified ABC algorithm named as FNF-BL-ABC [9]. In the FNF-BL-ABC algorithm, the original equation of the ABC algorithm used to generate candidate solutions for onlooker bee phase was changed with the forgetting (F) and neighbor (N) factors [9]. In addition to these, they introduced a probabilistic model called back propagation learning (BL) for determining whether a solution is abandoned or not in the scout bee phase. Simulation results in an ideal area and an area with obstacles showed that TNF-BL-ABC algorithm produces better coverage ratios than standard ABC algorithm and increases the convergence speed [9]. Yadav et al. changed the search equation used by the employed and onlooker bee phases of the standard ABC algorithm and tested the proposed ABC algorithm variant for dynamic positioning of sensor networks [10].

In this study, the performances of the parallelized ABC algorithms powered with the conventional and cooperative emigrant creation strategies for solving the deployment problem of sensor networks were analyzed. The improving effects of the cooperative emigrant creation strategy already seen in numerical optimization problems were also investigated through sensor deployment problem. The rest of the paper is organized as follows: In the second section, definition of the sensor deployment problem, coverage calculation and sensor detection approach called binary detection are given. Fundamental steps of the ABC algorithm and its parallelization according to the mentioned emigrant creation strategies are summarized in third and fourth sections, respectively. Experimental studies with different control parameters are presented in fifth section. Finally, conclusions and future works are given in the sixth section.

2. Deployment problem in wireless sensor networks

When a wireless sensor network is established, the main purposes of the settlement are to maximize the utilization period of the network and the area where the sensors successfully in communication with each other by sending information obtained from the tracked objects or environmental variables [5–9]. To maximize these two conflicting objectives, exact positions of the mobile and stationary sensor nodes should be determined carefully. However, there is usually no priori information about the area of interest or the targets being tracked [5–9].

By considering all of these limitations, sensor deployment can be defined as a problem for which the coverage of the network is maximized by correctly positioning sensor nodes. When the sensor nodes are deployed, the coverage ratio of the network that shows the percentage of the successfully covered area is calculated as in the Eq. (1). In the Eq. (1), c_i is the coverage of the ith sensor in the set of sensors S and A is the size of the area [5–9].

$$CR = \frac{\bigcup c_i}{A}, i \epsilon S \tag{1}$$

If the area of interest is divided into equally sized subareas or grids, and P is a point corresponds to the corner of a grid at position (x, y), the Euclidean distance between the point P and the sensor s_i positioned at (x_i, y_i) is used to decide whether point P is in detection range of sensor s_i or not [5–9]. By taking the detection range of the sensor s_i as r and the Euclidean distance between the P and s_i as $d(P, s_i)$, the coverage of point P by s_i, $c_p(s_i)$, is equal to 1 if $d(P, s_i)$ is less than r, otherwise $c_p(s_i)$ is equal to 0. The binary sensor detection model used in the coverage calculation is given in the Eq. (2) for P and s_i [5–9].

$$c_i = \begin{Bmatrix} 1, & d(P, c_i) < r \\ 0, & d(P, c_i) \geq r \end{Bmatrix} \tag{2}$$

3. ABC algorithm and its adaptation to sensor deployment problem

In a real honey bee colony, an intelligent foraging behaviour is carried out by three groups of bees called employed, onlooker and scout bees, respectively [11–13]. Employed bees are responsible for finding new food sources around the previously visited ones and carry nectar to the hive. When an employed bee turns back to the hive, she shares the information about the nectar quality of the memorized food source, location and distance to the hive with the onlooker bees [11–13]. Onlooker bees wait on the hive and select food sources introduced by the employed bees. However, selection of a food source by an onlooker is actually not a random operation. If a food source introduced by an employed is rich in terms of nectar, it is highly possible that it attracts more onlooker bees compared with the poor sources [11–13]. After an onlooker bee selects a food source, she becomes an employed and continues the foraging operation as an employed. The final group of bees consists of scout bees and scout bees randomly search the environment to find an undiscovered food source.

By considering intelligent job division and foraging behaviours of bee colonies, Karaboga proposed a new population based optimization algorithm called ABC algorithm [11–13]. In ABC algorithm, positions of the food sources correspond to the possible solutions of the interested problem and the nectar quality of a food source is directly related to the appropriateness of the solution. ABC algorithm starts its optimization operations by randomly generating a set of food sources [14–16]. Assume that there are *SN* different food sources each of them contains D parameters, the *jth* parameter of the *ith* food source, shortly x_{ij}, can be generated between lower bound x_j^{min} and upper bound x_j^{max} as described in Eq. (3) [14–16].

$$x_{ij} = x_j^{min} + rand(0,1)(x_j^{max} - x_j^{min}) \tag{3}$$

When solving sensor deployment problem, a food source is matched with the positions of the sensors belonging to the created network and a food source or solution containing S wireless sensors can be represented by a specialized D dimensional vector in which each element is filled with location information of the sensor. In Fig. 1, a food source is illustrated for deployment of D wireless sensors into a two dimensional area.

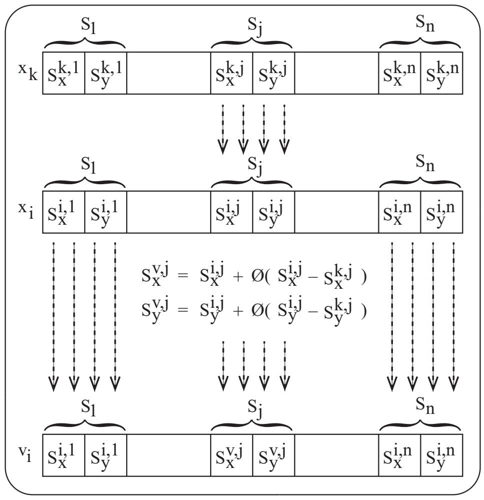


Figure 1. Representation of a solution for sensor deployment problem.

After generating initial food sources, each food source is associated only one employed bee. An employed bee is responsible with producing a candidate solution in the vicinity of the memorized food source by utilizing the Eq. (4) [17–19].

$$v_{ij} = x_{ij} + \phi_{ij}(x_{ij} - x_{kj}) \tag{4}$$

In Eq. (4), v_{ij} is the *jth* parameter of the candidate food source v_i. It should be noted that v_i is same with the x_i food source except the *jth* parameter. x_{ij} and x_{kj} are the *jth* parameters of the x_i and x_k solutions, respectively [19–23]. Finally, θ is a random coefficient between -1 and 1. If the $fit(v_i)$ fitness value of the v_i solution calculated by using the $obj(v_i)$ objective function value for a maximization problem as in the Eq. (5) is higher than the $fit(x_i)$ fitness value of the x_i food source, x_i food source is replaced with the v_i food source and the trial counter $trial_i$ showing how many times the x_i food source is not improved is set to zero. Otherwise, the same counter is incremented by one and its value is used to make a decision whether that food source is consumed or not [19–23].

$$fit(x_i) = \begin{Bmatrix} 1 + |obj(x_i)|; & obj(x_i) > 0 \\ 1/(1 + obj(x_i)); & obj(x_i) \leqslant 0 \end{Bmatrix} \quad (5)$$

When all the employed bees complete their operations and turn back to the hive, they share the information about the memorized food sources with the onlooker bees as mentioned before. Onlooker bees waiting on the hive select food sources and become employed foragers. However, each solution introduced by employed bees does not have equal chance for selection and qualified sources attract more onlookers. The relationship between choosability of a food source and its quality is modeled in ABC algorithm by assigning selection probability for each food source as calculated in Eq. (6) [19–23]. In Eq. (6), $p(x_i)$ shows the selection probability of the x_i solution with $fit(x_i)$ fitness value and it is clearly seen that $p(x_i)$ increases with the higher values of $fit(x_i)$. After a food source is chosen by an onlooker bee, this onlooker becomes an employed and produce a candidate solution using Eq. (4) [19–23].

$$p(x_i) = \frac{fit(x_i)}{\sum_j^{SN} fit(x_j)} \quad (6)$$

If a food source is not improved within employed and onlooker bee phases, a decision whether this food source is still consumed in the next cycle or not should be made to maintain the diversity of the solution set. In ABC algorithm, this decision is made by comparing the trial counters of the food sources with a control parameter called *limit*. A food source for which its trial counter exceeds the value of the *limit* parameter at most is abandoned and a scout bee is sent from the hive to discover a new food source as in the Eq. (3). In order to adjust exploration and exploitation characteristics of the algorithm, value of the *limit* parameter should be chosen carefully. For determining appropriate *limit* parameter of *SN* food sources when solving a D dimensional optimization problem, the formulation in Eq. (7) can be used [19–23].

$$\lceil a \times SN \times D \rceil \; and \; a \in \mathbb{Q}^+ \quad (7)$$

By considering the properties of the employed, onlooker and scout bee phases, the fundamental steps of the ABC algorithm and cyclical relationship between the mentioned bee phases are summarized in the Fig. 2.

```
Initialization:
  Assign values to limit and MFE parameters.
  Generate SN initial food source by using Eq. (3).
  Set evalCounter to zero.
Repeat
//Employed bee phase
   for i ← 1 ... SN do
     if evalCounter < MFE then
       Generate new solution x_new by using Eq. (4).
       Calculate fitness value of new solution.
       if fit(x_new) > fit(x_i) then
         Change x_i with x_new
       end if
       evalCounter ← evalCounter + 1
     end if
   end for
//Employed bee phase
//Onlooker bee phase
  sentBees ← 0, current ← 1
  Find probability values for each source by using Eq. (6).
  while sentBees ≠ SN and evalCounter < MFE do
    if p_current > rand(0,1) then
      sentBees ← sendBees + 1
      Generate new solution x_new by using Eq. (4).
      Calculate fitness value of new solution.
      if fit(x_new) > fit(x_i) then
        Change x_i with x_new
      end if
      evalCounter ← evalCounter + 1
    end if
    current ← ( current + 1 ) mod SN
  end while
//Onlooker bee phase
//Scout bee phase
  if evalCounter < MFE then
    Determine the abandoned food source using limit value.
    Generate a new source for the abandoned one by using Eq. (3).
    evalCounter ← evalCounter + 1
  end if
Until MFE is reached.
//Scout bee phase
```

Figure 2. Fundamental steps of the ABC algorithm.

4. Parallelization of ABC algorithm with conventional and cooperative model

Population based optimization algorithms including ABC algorithm are generally suitable for parallelization on distributed or shared memory based architectures. However, some steps of the algorithms require sequential operations and a limited set of modifications on the fundamental workflow of them should be made when they are tried to be parallelized. Dividing the whole colony into equally sized small colonies and evaluating them simultaneously on the different computing units are probably the most preferred parallelization approach [24–26]. However, number of bees in computing units is usually not enough compared to the serial implementations on single computing unit and parallelization does not go beyond a method that only focusing improvement on the execution times [24–26].

In order to address the problem to do with the number of bees in computing units, some solutions or individuals are migrated between subcolonies. The best solutions in each subcolony are the appropriate emigrant candidates and they usually change with the worst solutions in the neighbor subcolonies. This type of migration schema is the common part of the studies devoted to the parallelization and can be thought as the conventional approach [24–26]. However, if the best solutions can not be improved between subsequent migration periods, two or more copies of the same emigrant can be seen in the neighbor subcolony.

For increasing the efficiency of the emigrant solution and ensuring that the different emigrants are sent, an emigrant solution should be powered with other solution or solutions before it is sent to the neighbor subcolony. The mentioned idea about powering the best solution in a subcolony before migration is the main motivation of the cooperative model. In cooperative model, the best food source in a subcolony is strengthened by the more convenient parameters of the randomly chosen food source in the same subcolony. The Fig. 3 below illustrates the fundamental steps of the cooperative model in which neighborhood between subcolonies is determined by the ring topology.

```
Initialization:
  Assign values to limit and MFE parameters.
  Generate SN initial food source by using Eq. (1).
  Set evalCounter to zero and define a migPeriod.
  Determine numOfSubCol.
Repeat
After completion of a phase-triple
  if migPeriod is reached then
    if evalCounter < MFE then
      subColony ← index of current subcolony.
      x_random ← a random source in the (subColony)th subcolony.
      x_best, x_coop ← the best source in the (subColony)th subcolony.
      for i ← 1 ... D do
        Change x_coop,i with x_random,i
        Calculate the fitness value of x_coop
        evalCounter ← evalCounter + 1
        if fit(x_coop) < fit(x_best) then
          Change x_coop,i with x_best,i
        end if
      end for
  Send x_coop to the ((subColony + 1) mod numOfSubCol)th subcolony.
Until MFE is reached
```

Figure 3. Fundamental steps of the parallel ABC algorithm with cooperative model.

As seen from the fundamental steps of the parallel ABC algorithm with cooperative model, the best food source chosen as an emigrant for the current migration period is modified with the parameters of the randomly selected food source. If the *ith* parameter of the randomly selected food source increases the fitness value of the best food source, the *ith* parameter of the best food source is replaced with the corresponding parameter of the randomly selected food source. By utilizing this type of emigrant creation schema, the probability of sending qualified food sources as emigrants and the chance for consumption more qualified solutions are significantly increased.

However, it should be noted that generation of cooperative emigrant requires D times more fitness evaluations compared to the conventional emigrant creation schema. If the migration period and neighborhood topology are chosen by considering the computational burden of the cooperative emigrant creation approach, the speedup and efficiency values of the parallelized ABC algorithm with cooperative model get closer to the speedup and efficiency values of the parallelized ABC algorithm in which the emigrant is determined as the local best food source in the subcolony and then it is sent to the neighbor subcolony without modification.

5. Experimental studies

In order to analyze the performance of the conventional and cooperative emigrant creation schema for solving the sensor deployment problem, a set of experimental studies has bee carried out with 100 mobile sensors that should be positioned at the suitable locations on a $100m \times 100m$ area by considering the maximization of the coverage. For serial ABC algorithm, sABC algorithm, parallel ABC algorithm with the conventional emigrant creation strategy, pABC algorithm, and parallel ABC algorithm with the cooperative emigrant creation strategy, coop-pABC algorithm, the colony size was set to 20 and the *limit* parameter was chosen as 100 for the experiments [7, 8].

Neighborhood topology of the pABC and coop-pABC algorithms was ring and for each subcolony only one emigrant was generated. When an emigrant was sent to its neighbor subcolony, it was replaced with the worst solution found in the neighbor subcolony. The migration period (migration rate) that determines the frequency of the communication between subcolonies was set to 20 which means that after completion of a 20 employed-onlooker-scout bee phase triple, subcolonies exchange their emigrants according to the used neighborhood topology. sABC algorithm, pABC and coop-pABC algorithms with four subcolonies were tested independently until the maximum evaluation number reached to $1,000$, $2,000$ and $10,000$ on a system equipped with Intel i5 750 processor and 4 GB of RAM. sABC, pABC and coop-pABC algorithms were coded in C programming language and the required synchronization between subcolonies or processor cores were maintained by using the built-in function in pthreads library. Each of the algorithm was run 20 different times with random seeds and the means best coverage ratios and standard deviations related to the 20 runs were recorded and given in the Tables 1-3.

When the results given in the Tables 1-3 are investigated it is clearly seen that the the coop-pABC algorithm is capable of producing better mean coverage ratios compared to the pABC algorithm for all of the three experimental cases and the sABC algorithm for the two of three different experimental cases. By starting distribution of the cooperative emigrants, parallelized ABC algorithm improves the qualities of the solutions in each subcolony. Even though the differences between mean best coverage ratios of the algorithms are relatively small, the complex structure of the deployment problem and the difficulty on improving coverage value after determining positions of the some sensors should be remembered.

Table 1. Coverage values obtained by the sABC and pABC.

Evaluations	sABC		pABC	
	Mean	Std.Dev.	Mean	Std.Dev.
1,000	**0.88257**	**0.00410**	0.87507	0.00594
2,000	**0.91207**	0.00638	0.90887	**0.00483**
10,000	0.96755	**0.00226**	**0.96904**	0.00372

Table 2. Coverage values obtained by the sABC and coop-pABC.

Evaluations	sABC		coop-pABC	
	Mean	Std.Dev.	Mean	Std.Dev
1,000	**0.88257**	**0.00410**	0.87970	0.00457
2,000	0.91207	0.00638	**0.91530**	**0.00362**
10,000	0.96755	**0.00226**	**0.97063**	0.00553

Table 3. Coverage values obtained by the pABC and coop-pABC.

Evaluations	pABC		coop-pABC	
	Mean	Std.Dev.	Mean	Std.Dev
1,000	0.87507	0.00594	**0.87970**	**0.00457**
2,000	0.90887	0.00483	**0.91530**	**0.00362**
10,000	0.96904	**0.00372**	**0.97063**	0.00553

One of the main purposed with the parallelization of an algorithm is actually decreasing the execution times compared to the its serial implementation while protecting the qualities of the final solutions or results. For measuring the gain in the execution times, two important metrics called speedup and efficiency are commonly used. Speedup measure can be explained as a ratio between average execution times between serial and parallel implementations of the same algorithm and its maximum value can be equal to the number of cores or computing nodes of the cluster. If the speedup value of the parallelization is equal to the number of core or computing nodes, it is said that parallelization is linear. Efficiency metric is defined as a ratio between speedup and number of computing units used in the parallelization schema.

If the parallelization overhead stemmed from the mechanism such as synchronization, mutual exclusion can not be neglected, the maximum value of the efficiency can be relatively close to one. In Tables 4-7, average execution times of the sABC, pABC and coop-pABC algorithms, speedup and efficiency values for parallel implementations are given. As seen from the results given in Tables 4-7, conventional emigrant creation strategy reaches more desired speedup and efficiency values when compared to the cooperative emigrant creation strategy based parallelization approach. If the reduction in execution time is the main concern of the parallelization, the migration period should be carefully chosen to balance the qualities of the final solutions and speedup-efficiency values.

Table 4. Average execution times for sABC and pABC.

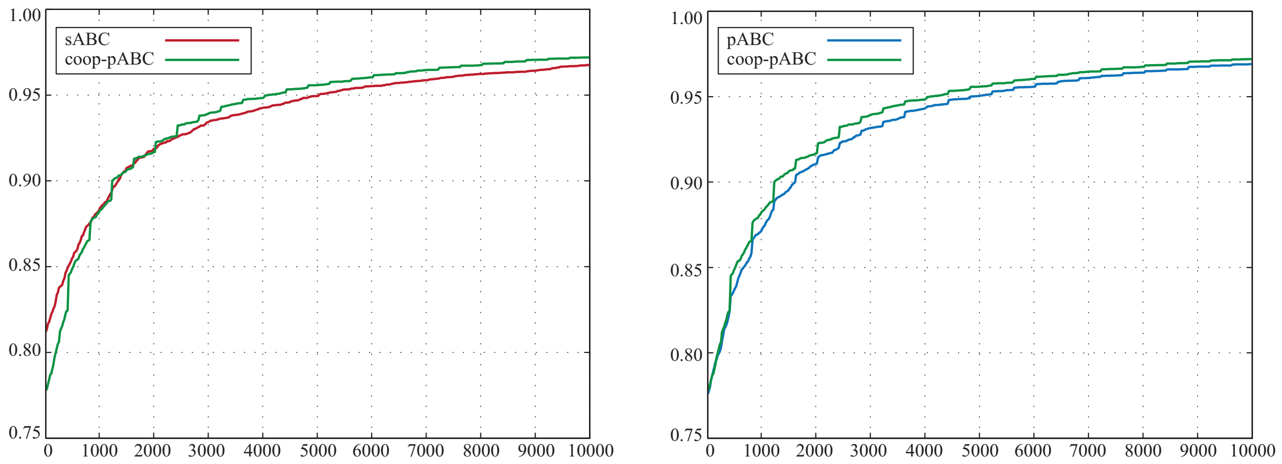
Evaluations	sABC		pABC	
	Mean	Std.Dev.	Mean	Std.Dev.
1,000	48.63031	2.01138	13.39241	0.60145
2,000	94.37129	3.73157	27.23307	1.18997
10,000	437.05957	11.35073	124.54752	3.29203

Table 5. Speedup and efficiency values of pABC.

Evaluations	ABC and pABC Algorithms	
	Speedup	Efficiency
1,000	3.63118	0.90779
2,000	3.46531	0.86633
10,000	3.50917	0.87729

Table 6. Average execution times for sABC and coop-pABC.

Evaluations	sABC		coop-pABC	
	Mean	Std.Dev.	Mean	Std.Dev.
1,000	48.63031	2.01138	18.78291	0.69383
2,000	94.37129	3.73157	37.47984	1.55957
10,000	437.05957	11.35073	187.71349	3.48997



(a) **(b)**

Figure 4. Convergence curves of sABC and coop-pABC (a) and pABC and coop-pABC (b).

Table 7. Speedup and efficiency values for coop-pABC.

Evaluations	ABC and coop-pABC Algorithms	
	Speedup	Efficiency
1,000	2.58907	0.64726
2,000	2.51792	0.62948
10,000	2.32833	0.58208

Another comparison between sABC and parallel ABC algorithms can be made about the convergence characteristics of them illustrated in Fig. 4 below. When the convergence curves given in Fig. 4 are investigated, it is clearly seen that convergence performance of the coop-pABC algorithm is better than the convergence performances of the sABC and pABC algorithms. Although the initial mean best coverage values of parallel ABC algorithms is less than the initial mean best coverage value of sABC algorithm, they reached sABC algorithm before completion of the first $1,000$ evaluations and then start to produce more eligible mean best coverage values than sABC algorithm.

In order to make a visual investigation how the sensors are positioned by the sABC, pABC and coop-pABC algorithms and how the areas being covered change for the different termination conditions, the Figs. 5-10 should be utilized. As easily seen from the Figs. 5-10, successfully coveraged areas by the algorithms are rational with the total number of evaluations. With the completion of the $1,000$ evaluations, both serial and parallel implementations of the ABC algorithm produce deployments in which some sensors are located relatively close positions and coverage areas of them are overlapped. However, when the number of evaluations is set to $10,000$, overlapped sensors are scattered more robustly and coop-pABC algorithm outperforms sABC and pABC algorithms in terms of mean best coverage ratios.

Deciding whether coop-pABC algorithm can be interchangeable with the sABC or pABC algorithms, an information extracted from a statistical test should be utilized. For this purpose, a nonparametric test called Wilcoxon signed rank test is used with the significance level (p) less than 0.05. From the test results given in the Table 8 for $10,000$ fitness evaluations, it is seen that there is no significant difference between serial and parallel implementations of the ABC algorithm even though coop-pABC algorithm produces better mean best coverage values and parallel implementations can be used on behalf of sABC algorithm if the running environments are designed for utilizing the multi-core or multi-node based architectures.

Table 8. Statistical comparison between ABC algorithms.

Test statistics	sABC/coop-pABC	pABC/coop-pABC
Z-Value	-1.784925	-1.274946
p-Value	0.074274	0.202328
Sign.	-	-

6. Conclusion

In this study, ABC algorithm was parallelized for running on a multi-core processor and it performance was tested on solving wireless sensor deployment problem. Parallelized ABC algorithm by dividing the whole bee colony into subcolonies running simultaneously was powered with the cooperative emigrant creation approach and the results obtained with the mentioned ABC algorithm were compared to the results obtained with

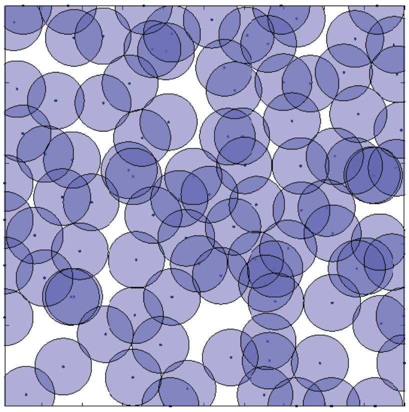


Figure 5. The best coverage of sABC for 1,000 evaluations

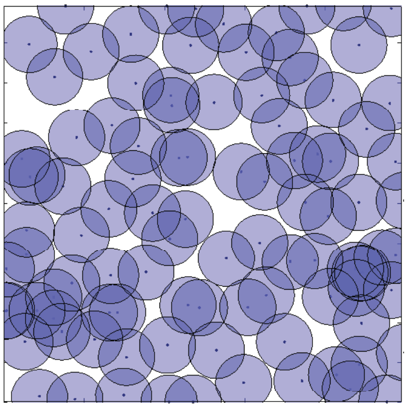


Figure 6. The best coverage of pABC for 1,000 evaluations

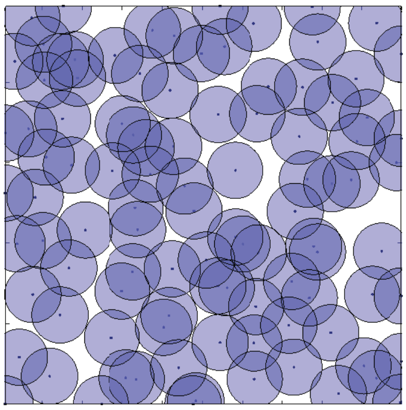


Figure 7. The best coverage of coop-pABC for 1,000 eveluations

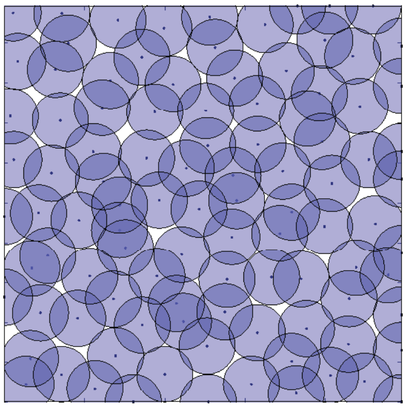


Figure 8. The best coverage of sABC for 10,000 evaluations

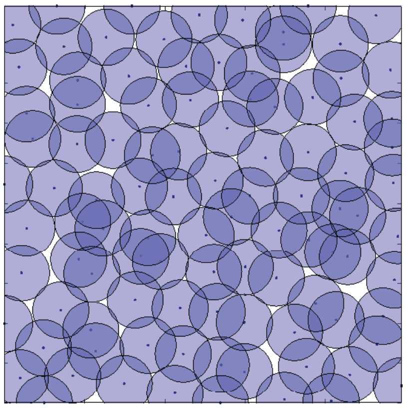


Figure 9. The best coverage of pABC for 10,000 evaluations

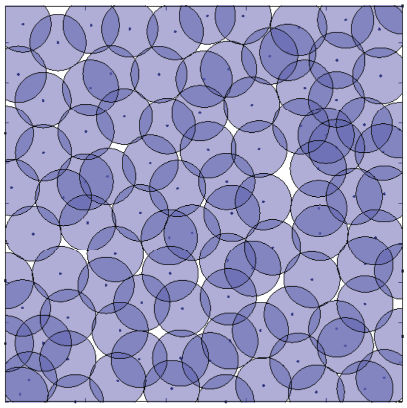


Figure 10. The best coverage of coop-pABC for 10,000 eveluations

standard serial and conventional parallel ABC algorithms. Comparative studies showed that cooperative model is still capable of increasing convergence speed and improving solution qualities of parallel ABC algorithm for sensor deployment problem as seen in the numerical benchmark problems by adding extra computational burden that changes directly with the migration period to the execution time of the algorithm.

References

[1] Akyildiz, I.F., Su, W., Sankarasubramaniam, Y., Cayirci, E. (2002). Wireless sensor networks: a survey. *Computer Networks*, 38, 393-422.

[2] Chakrabarty, K., Iyengar, S.S., Qi, H., Cho, E. (2002). Grid coverage for surveillance and target location in distributed sensor networks. *IEEE Transactions on Computers*, 51, 1448-1453.

[3] Bhondekar, A.P., Vig, R., Singla, M.L., C. Ghanshyam, Kapur, P. (2009). Genetic algorithm based node placement methodology for wireless sensor networks. *Proceedings of the International Multiconference on Engineers and Computer Scientists*, 1, 18-20.

[4] Okay, F.Y., Ozdemir, S. (2015). Kablosuz algılayıcı aglarda kapsama alanının cok amalı evrimsel algoritmalar ile artırılması. *Journal of the Faculty of Engineering & Architecture of Gazi University*, 30, 143-153.

[5] Li, Z., Lei, L. (2009). Sensor node deployment in wireless sensor networks based on improved particle swarm optimization. *Applied Superconductivity and Electromagnetic Devices*, 215-217.

[6] Udgata, S.K., Sabat, S.L., Mini, S. (2009). Sensor deployment in irregular terrain using artificial bee colony algorithm. *Nature & Biologically Inspired Computing*, 1309-1314 .

[7] Ozturk, C., Karaboga, D., Gorkemli, B. (2011). Probabilistic dynamic deployment of wireless sensor networks by artificial bee colony algorithm. *Sensors*, 11, 6056-6065 .

[8] Ozturk, C., Karaboga, D., Gorkemli, B. (2012). Artificial bee colony algorithm for dynamic deployment of wireless sensor networks. *Turkish Journal of Electrical Engineering & Computer Sciences*, 20, 255-262.

[9] Yu, X., Zhang, J., Fan, J., Zhang, T. (2013). A faster convergence artificial bee colony algorithm in sensor deployment for wireless sensor networks. *International Journal of Distributed Sensor Networks*, 9, 1-15.

[10] Yadav, R.K., Gupdaa, D., Lobiyal, D.K. (2017). Dynamic positionin of mobile sensors using modified artificial bee colony algorithm in wireless sensor networks. *International Journal of Control Theory and Applications*, 10, 167-176.

[11] Karaboga, D., Akay, B. (2009). A suvery: algorithms simulating bee swarm intelligence. *Artificial Intelligence Reviews*, 31, 233-253.

[12] Bansal, J.C., Sharma, H., Jadon, S.S. (2013). Artificial bee colony algorithm: a survey. *International Journal of Advanced Intelligence*, 5, 123-159.

[13] Bolaji, A.L., Khader, A.T., Al-betar, M.A., Awadallah, M.A. (2013). Artificial bee colony algorithm, its variants and applications: a survey. *Journal of Theorical and Applied Information Technology*, 47, 434-459.

[14] Karaboga, D., Akay, B. (2007). A powerful and efficient algorithm for numerical function optimization: artificial bee colony algorithm. *Journal of Global Optimization*, 39, 459-471.

[15] Karaboga, D., Akay, B. (2008). On the performance of artificial bee colony algorithm. *Applied Soft Computing*, 8, 687-697.

[16] Akay, B., Karaboga, D. (2012). Artificial bee colony algorithm for large-scale problems and engineering design optimization. *Journal of Intelligent Manufacturing*, 23, 1001-1014.

[17] Celik, M., Koylu F., Karaboga, D. (2015). CoABCMiner: an algorithm for cooperative rule classification system based on artificial bee colony algorithm. *International Journal of Artificial Intelligence Tools*, 24, 1-50.

[18] Karaboga, D., Aslan, S. (2016). Best supported emigrant creation for parallel implementation of artificial bee colony algorithm. *IU-Journal of Electrical & Electronics Engineering*, 16, 2055-2064.

[19] Badem, H., Basturk, A., Caliskan, A., Yuksel, M.E. (2017). A new efficient training strategy for deep neural networks by hybridization of artificial bee colony and limited-memory BFGS optimization algorithms. *Neurocomputing*, 266, 506-526.

[20] Badem, H., Basturk, A., Caliskan, A., Yuksel, M.E. (2018). A new hybrid optimization method combining artificial bee colony and limited-memory BFGS algorithms for efficient numerical optimization. *Applied Soft Computing*, 266, 506-526 .

[21] Akay, B., Karaboga, D. (2017). Artificial bee colony algorithm variants on constrained optimization. *An Internation Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications*, 7, 98-111.

[22] Ozturk, C., Aslan, S. (2016). A new artificial bee colony algorithm to solve the multiple sequence alignment problem. *Internation Journal of Data Mining and Bioinformatics*, 14, 332-352.

[23] Karaboga, D., Aslan, S. (2016). A discrete artificial bee colony algorithm for detecting transcription factor binding sites in DNA sequences. *Genetics and Molecular Research*, 15, 1-11.

[24] Narasimhan, H. (2009). Parallel artificial bee colony algorithm. *Nature & Biologically Inspired Computing*, 306-311.

[25] Banharnsakun, A., Tiranee, A., Booncharoen, S. (2010). Artificial bee colony algorithm on distributed environment. *Nature & Biologically Inspired Computing*, 13-18 .

[26] Karaboga, D., Aslan, S. (2016). A new emigrant creation strategy based on local best sources for parallel artificial bee colony algorithm. In 24th Signal Processing and Communication Application Conference, 901-904.

Selcuk Aslan *received M.Sc. and Ph.D. degrees from the Department of Computer Engineering, Erciyes University, Kayseri, Turkey in 2013 and 2016, respectively. He is currently working as an assistant professor at Department of Computer Engineering, Ondokuz Mayıs University, Samsun, Turkey. His research interests include numeric and combinatorial optimization, parallel and distributed computations and their usage in engineering applications of intelligent methods.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications (http://ijocta.balikesir.edu.tr)

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN: 2146-0957 eISSN: 2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.11-17 (2019)
https://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00622

RESEARCH ARTICLE

An application of the MEFM to the modified Boussinesq equation

Tolga Akturk

Department of Mathematics and Science Education, Faculty of Education, Ordu University, Turkey
tolgaakturkk@gmail.com

ARTICLE INFO

Article history:
Received: 2 June 2018
Accepted: 4 October 2018
Available Online: 15 October 2018

Keywords:
Modified Expansion Function method
Modified Boussinesq equation
The solitary wave solution

AMS Classification 2010:
35C07, 35C08, 35J60

ABSTRACT

In this paper, some travelling wave solutions of the Modified Boussinesq (MBQ) equation are obtained by using the modified expansion function method (MEFM). When the obtained solutions are commented, trigonometric functions including hyperbolic features are obtained. The 2D and 3D graphics of the solutions have been investigated by selecting appropriate parameters. All the obtained solutions provide the MBQ equation. In this work, all mathematical calculations are done with Wolfram Mathematica software.

1. Introduction

The solution of nonlinear partial differential equations has a measure in real life. For this reason, many methods have been developed and applied to solve these equations. Some of these, respectively the trial equation method [1], the new function methods [2-6], the extended trial equation method [7], Kudryashov method [8], the sine-Gordon expansion method [9-10] and so on. In this study, we apply the modified expansion function method (MEFM) [11-13] to solve a nonlinear MBQ equation and find new interactions among travelling wave solutions. Boussinesq–type equations of higher order in dispersion as well as in nonlinearity are reproduced for wave–current interaction over an unbalanced bottom. There are various methods in the literature to obtain the solution of the equation. Some of those; tanh method, the modified decomposition method and bilinearization method

In Section 2, Information about the modified expansion function method will be given.

In Section 3 the modified expansion function method is applied to the MBQ equation and the new exact wave solution to this problem is obtained. The 2D and 3D graphics of the solutions were drawed by using the Mathematica software program.

The modified Boussinesq equation can be defined as follows [14-16],

$$u_{tt} - u_{xxtt} - u_{xx} + \frac{a}{2}\left(u^2\right)_{xx} = 0. \tag{1}$$

2. Modified Expansion Function method

In this part, we will be given information about MEFM. Consider the following nonlinear partial differential equation (NPDE):

$$P\left(u, u^2, u_x, u_t, u_{xx}, u_{tt}, \left(u^2\right)_{xx}, u_{xxt}, u_{xxtt}\right) = 0, \tag{2}$$

where $u = u(x,t)$ is unknown function, P is a polynomial in $u(x,t)$ and its derivatives.

The general form of the nonlinear partial differential equation (2) is given above. By applying wave conversion to NPDE expression (3), the general form of the following nonlinear ordinary differential equation (4) is obtained.

Step 1: Consider the following travelling wave transformation:

$$u(x,t) = u(\xi), \quad \xi = v\left(x - ct\right). \tag{3}$$

Substituting Eq. (3) into Eq. (2), gives the following nonlinear ordinary differential equation (NODE);

$$N\left(u, u^2, \frac{du}{d\xi}, \frac{d^2u}{d\xi^2}, \dots\right) = 0. \tag{4}$$

Step 2: We assume the following solution;

*Corresponding author

$$u(\xi)=\frac{\sum_{i=0}^{m} A_i[e^{-\vartheta(\xi)}]^i}{\sum_{j=0}^{n} B_j[e^{-\vartheta(\xi)}]^j}= \tag{5}$$

$$=\frac{A_0+A_1e^{-\vartheta}+\ldots+A_me^{-m\vartheta}}{B_0+B_1e^{-\vartheta}+\ldots+B_ne^{-n\vartheta}},$$

where $A_i, B_j, (0\le i\le m,\ 0\le j\le n)$.

m, n are positive integers that can be obtained by using the balancing principle.

$$\vartheta'(\eta)=e^{-\vartheta(\eta)}+ke^{\vartheta(\eta)}+\lambda. \tag{6}$$

Eq.(6) has the following families of solutions [17]:

Family 1: When, $k\neq 0, \lambda^2-4k>0$,

$$\vartheta(\eta)=ln\left(\frac{-\sqrt{\lambda^2-4k}}{2k}\tanh\left(\frac{\sqrt{\lambda^2-4k}}{2}(\eta+EE)\right)-\frac{\lambda}{2k}\right). \tag{7}$$

Family 2: When, $k\neq 0$, $\lambda^2-4k<0$,

$$\vartheta(\eta)=ln\left(\frac{\sqrt{-\lambda^2+4k}}{2k}\tan\left(\frac{\sqrt{-\lambda^2+4k}}{2}(\eta+EE)\right)-\frac{\lambda}{2k}\right). \tag{8}$$

Family 3: When, $k=0, \lambda\neq 0$, $\lambda^2-4k>0$,

$$\vartheta(\eta)=-ln\left(\frac{\lambda}{e^{\lambda(\eta+EE)}-1}\right). \tag{9}$$

Family 4: When, $k\neq 0, \lambda\neq 0$, $\lambda^2-4k=0$,

$$\vartheta(\eta)=ln\left(-\frac{2\lambda(\eta+EE)+4}{\lambda^2(\eta+EE)}\right). \tag{10}$$

Family 5: When, $k=0, \lambda=0$, $\lambda^2-4k=0$,

$$\vartheta(\eta)=ln(\eta+EE), \tag{11}$$

Where, EE is a integral constant.

Step 3: By substituting Eq. (5) and its derivatives into Eq. (4), we get algebraic equation system. This system was solved by using the Mathematica software program and then the solutions of the MBQ equation were obtained.

3. Application

In this section, the modified expansion function method will be used to obtain solutions of the MBQ equation. Consider the following travelling wave transformation:

$$u(x,t)=u(\xi),\quad \xi=v\left(x-ct\right). \tag{12}$$

the following nonlinear ordinary differential equation is obtained,

$$au^2+2\left(c^2-1\right)u-2c^2v^2u''=0. \tag{13}$$

If the balancing procedure is applied to equation (13), we get $n=m+2$ equality.

Choosing $m=1$, we get $n=3$. Eq. (5) for m and n values is obtained as follows;

$$u\left(\xi\right)=\frac{A_0+A_1e^{-\vartheta}+A_2e^{-2\vartheta}+A_3e^{-3\vartheta}}{B_0+B_1e^{-\vartheta}}. \tag{14}$$

If Eq. (14) is regulated according to the necessary term in equation (13), then the following system of algebraic equations is obtained which consists of the coefficients of $e^{-\vartheta(\xi)}$.

Some suitable coefficients obtained by using the Mathematica package program are given below.

Case-1:

$$A_0=\frac{12\mu v^2B_0}{a-a\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)v^2},$$

$$A_1=-\frac{12v^2\left(\lambda B_0+\mu B_1\right)}{a\left(-1+\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)v^2\right)},$$

$$A_2=-\frac{12v^2\left(B_0+\lambda B_1\right)}{a\left(-1+\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)v^2\right)},$$

$$A_3=\frac{12v^2B_1}{a-a\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)v^2},$$

$$c=\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-v^2\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)}}.$$

Substituting these coefficients into Eq. (14), the following solutions:

Family 1: When, $k\neq 0, \lambda^2-4k>0$, solution of equation (1),

$$u_1\left(x,t\right)=\frac{\left(12\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)\mu v^2\right)}{\left(a\left(-1+\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)v^2\right)\left(\lambda Cosh\left[\psi\right]+\sqrt{\lambda^2-4\mu}Sinh\left[\psi\right]\right)^2\right)}, \tag{15}$$

where,

$$\left(\psi=\left[\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\lambda^2-4\mu}\left(EE+\xi\right)v\right]\right).$$

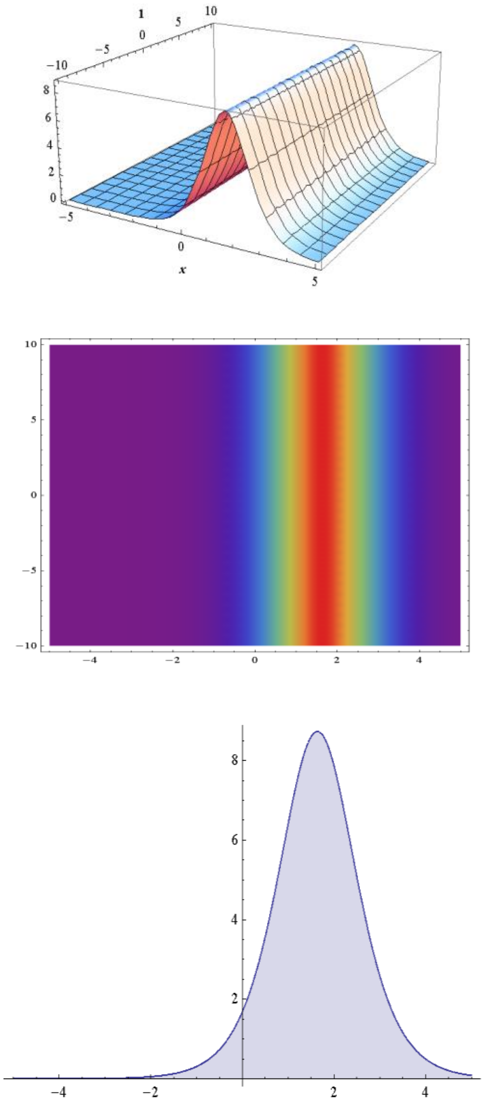


Figure-1. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (15) in $\lambda = 2, \mu = 0.2, c = 4, a = 0.5, \ \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$

Family 2: When, $k \neq 0$, $\lambda^2 - 4k < 0$, we get,

$$u_2(x,t) = \frac{\left(12\left(\lambda^2 - 4\mu\right)\mu\nu^2\right)}{\left(a\left(-1+\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)\nu^2\right)\left(\lambda Cos[\upsilon] - \sqrt{-\lambda^2+4\mu}Sin[\upsilon]\right)^2\right)}, \tag{16}$$

where,

$$\left(\upsilon = \left[\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{-\lambda^2+4\mu}\left(EE+\xi\right)\nu\right]\right).$$

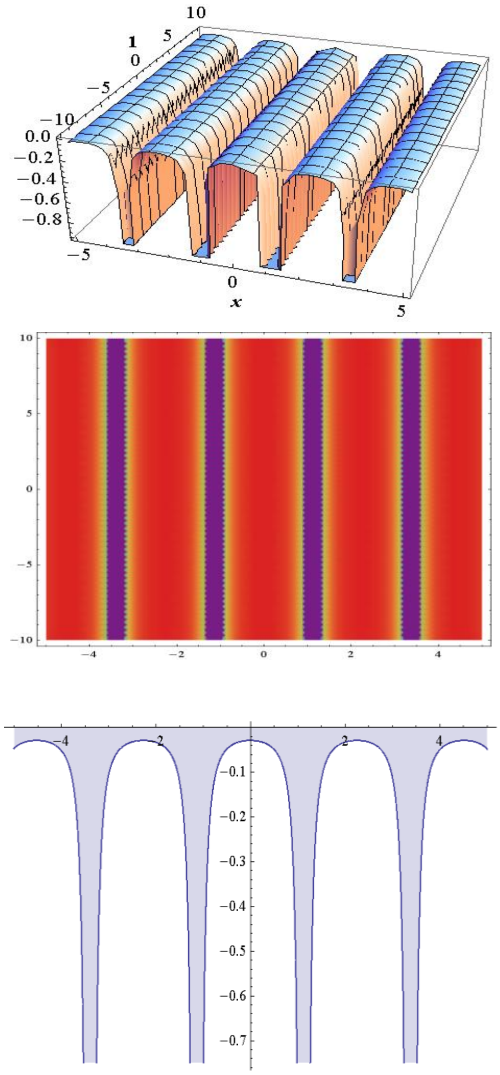


Figure-2. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (16) in $\lambda = 2, \mu = 0.2, c = 4, a = 0.5, \ \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$.

Family 3: $k = 0, \lambda \neq 0$, $\lambda^2 - 4k > 0$,

$$u_3(x,t) = \left(-\frac{3\lambda^2\nu^2 Csch\left[\frac{1}{2}\lambda\left(EE+\left(\xi\right)\nu\right)\right]^2}{-a+a\lambda^2\nu^2}\right), \tag{17}$$

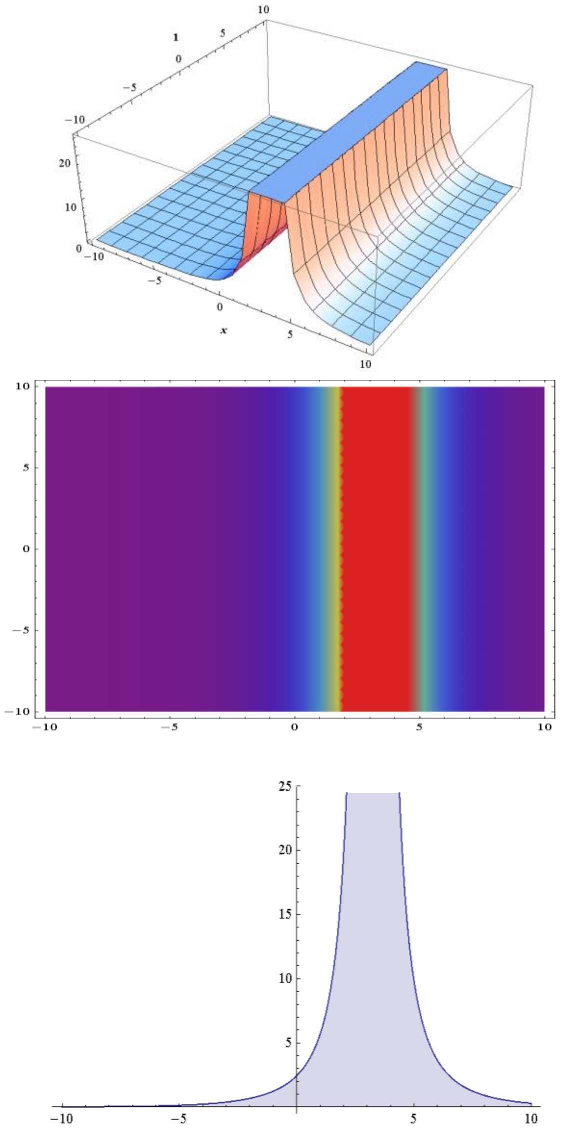


Figure-3. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (17) in $\lambda = 0.5, \mu = 0, c = 4, a = 0.5, \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$.

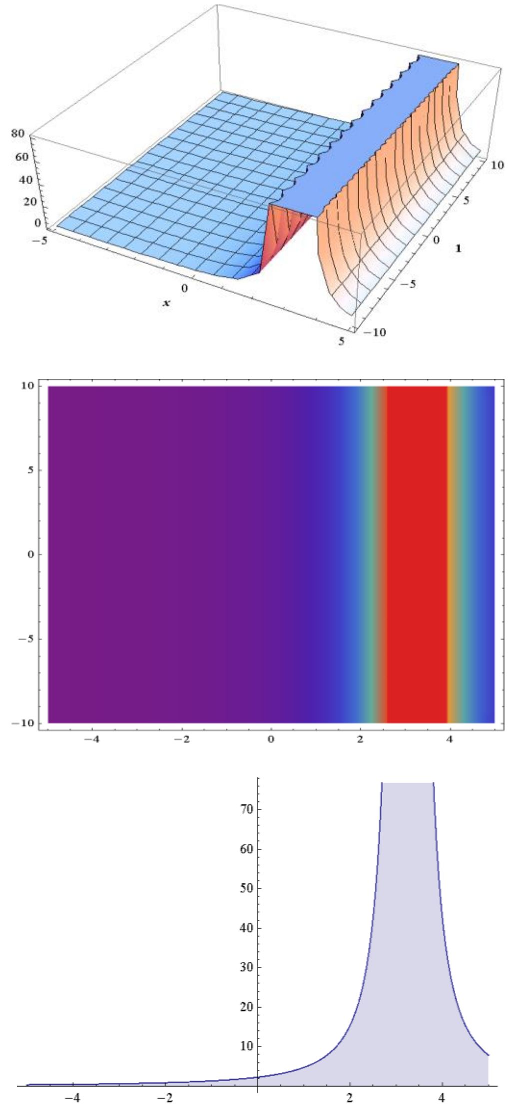


Figure-4. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (18) in $\lambda = 0, \mu = 0, c = 4$ $a = 0.5, \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$.

According to Family-4, the solution does not exist.

Family 5: When $k = 0$, $\lambda = 0$ and $\lambda^2 - 4k = 0$,

$$u_5(x,t) = \left(\frac{12\nu^2}{a\left(EE + (\xi)\nu\right)^2} \right), \tag{18}$$

Case-2:

$$A_0 = \frac{\left(-1+c^2\right)\left(-\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}+c^2\left(\lambda^2+8\mu\right)\right)B_0}{a\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}},$$

$$A_1 = \frac{\left(\left(-1+c^2\right)\left(12c^2\lambda B_0+\left(-\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}+c^2\left(\lambda^2+8\mu\right)\right)B_1\right)\right)}{a\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}},$$

$$A_2 = \frac{\left(12c^2\left(-1+c^2\right)\left(B_0+\lambda B_1\right)\right)}{a\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}},$$

$$A_3 = \frac{\left(12c^2\left(-1+c^2\right)B_1\right)}{a\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}},$$

$$\nu = -\frac{\sqrt{-1+c^2}}{\left(\sqrt{c^4\left(\lambda^2-4\mu\right)^2}\right)^{\frac{1}{4}}}.$$

Substituting these coefficients into Eq. (14), the following solutions:

Family 1: When, $k \neq 0$, $\lambda^2 - 4k > 0$, we get

$$u_1(x,t) = \frac{\left(-1+c^2\right) Sech[\psi]^2 \left(-2\left(5c^2(\chi)+\sqrt{c^4(\chi)^2}\right)\mu\right)}{\left(a\sqrt{c^4(\chi)^2}\left(\lambda+\sqrt{\chi}Tanh[\psi]\right)^2\right)}, \tag{19}$$

where,

$$\left(\chi = \lambda^2 - 4\mu, \quad \psi = \sqrt{\lambda^2-4\mu}Tanh\left[\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{\lambda^2-4\mu}\left(EE+\xi\right)\right]\right),$$

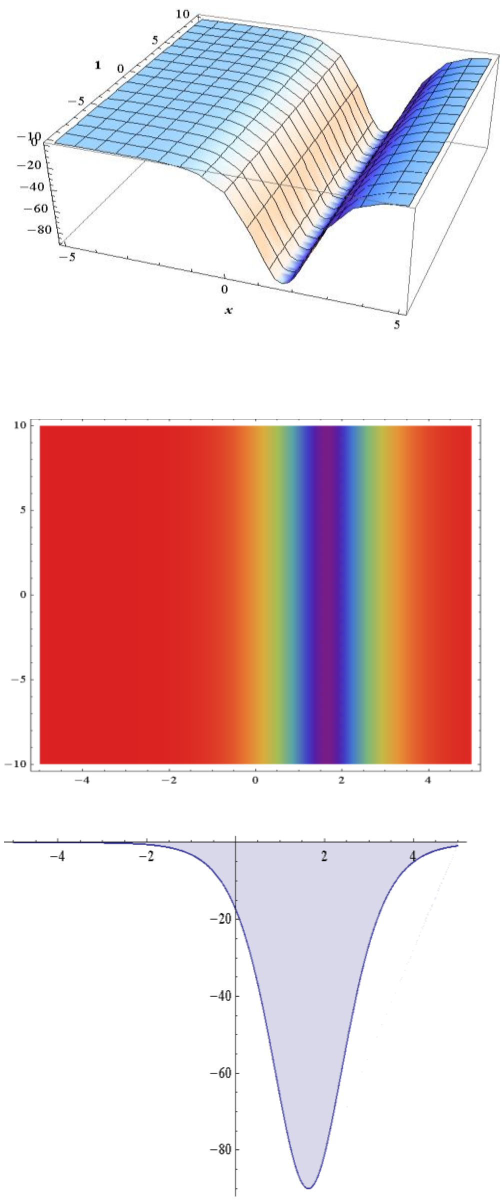


Figure-5. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (19) in $\lambda = 0.2, \mu = 2, c = 4$ $a = 0.5, \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$.

Family 2: When, $k \neq 0$, $\lambda^2 - 4k < 0$,

$$u_2(x,t) = \frac{-\left(-1+c^2\right)\left(\sqrt{c^4\chi^2}\left(\lambda-\sqrt{-\chi}Tan[\tau]\right)^2\right) + c^2\chi\left(-\lambda^2+12\mu+2\lambda\sqrt{-\chi}Tan[\tau]\right)}{\left(\left(\lambda^2+8\mu\right)Tan[\tau]^2\right)}, \tag{20}$$

where,

$$\left(\tau = \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{-\chi}\left(EE+\xi\right)\nu\right).$$

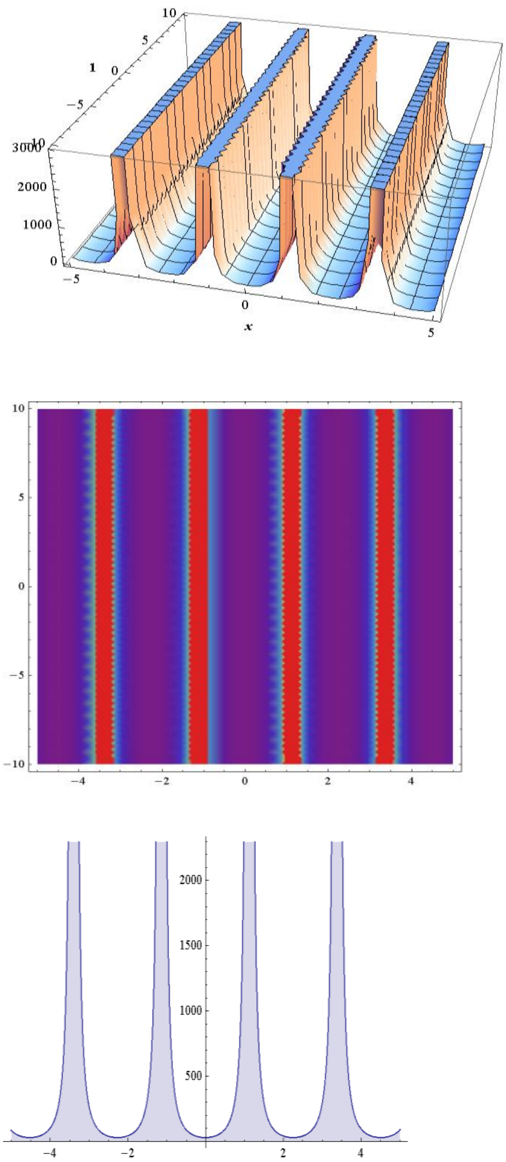


Figure-6. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (20) in $\lambda = 0.5, \mu = 2, c = 4$ $a = 0.5, \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$.

Family 3: $k = 0, \lambda \neq 0$, $\lambda^2 - 4k > 0$,

$$u_3(x,t) = \frac{\left(-1+c^2\right)\left(-\sqrt{c^4\lambda^4}+c^2\lambda^4\left(1+3Csch\left[\frac{1}{2}\lambda\left(EE+\xi\right)\nu\right]^2\right)\right)}{a\sqrt{c^4\lambda^4}}, \tag{21}$$

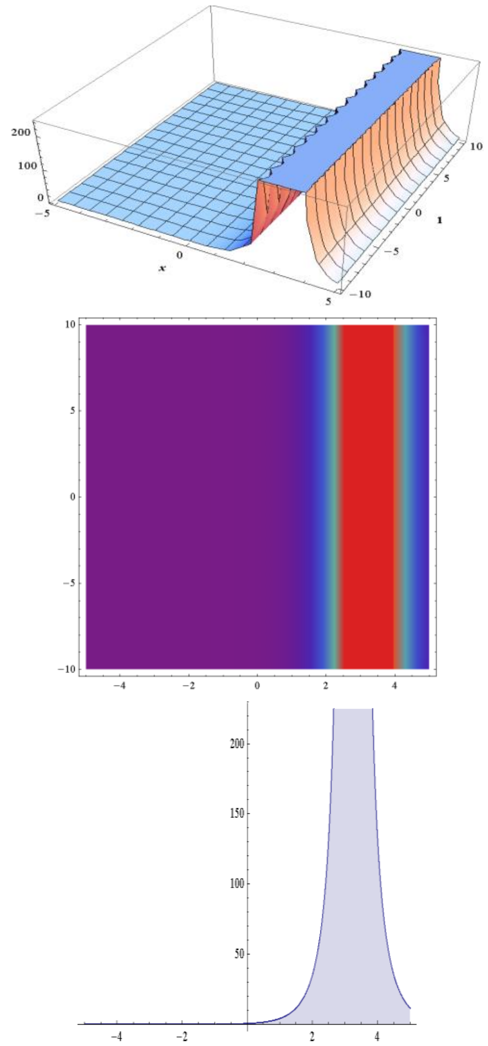


Figure-7. The 3D, density graphic and 2D surfaces of Eq. (21) in $\lambda = 0, \mu = 2, c = 4$ $a = 0.5, \nu = 1, EE = 0.75$ and $t = 1$.

Family-4 and Family-5, the solution does not exist.

4. Conclusion

In this study, we obtained some travelling wave solutions of Boussinesq equation by using modified expansion function method. The results show that the modified expansion function method is a suitable mathematical method for solving nonlinear partial differential equations. The resulting solutions were checked with the Mathematica software. These solutions have been obtained by MEFM for the first time in the literature.

Acknowledgments

We would like to thank the reviewers and editors who participated in the evaluation process of our production.

References

[1] Liu, C. S. (2005). Trial equation method and its applications to nonlinear evolution equations, *Acta Physica Sinica*, 54(6), 2505-2509.

[2] Shen, G., Sun, Y., & Xiong, Y. (2013). New travelling-wave solutions for Dodd-Bullough equation, *Journal of Applied Mathematics*, vol. 2013, Article ID 364718, 5 pages.

[3] Sun, Y. (2014). New travelling wave solutions for Sine-Gordon equation, *Journal of Applied Mathematics*, vol. 2014, Article ID 841416, 4 pages.

[4] Bulut, H., Akturk, T., & Gurefe, Y. (2015). Travelling wave solutions of the (N+1)-dimensional sine-cosine-Gordon equation, *AIP Conference Proceedings* 1637, 145.

[5] Akturk, T., Bulut, H., & Gurefe, Y. (2017). New function method to the (n+1)-dimensional nonlinear problems, *An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications*, 7(3), 234-239.

[6] Akturk, T., Bulut, H., & Gurefe, Y. (2017). An application of the new function method to the Zhiber-Shabat equation, *An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications*, 7(3), 271-274.

[7] Pandir, Y., Gurefe, Y., Kadak, U., & Misirli, E. (2012). Classification of exact solutions for some nonlinear partial differential equations with generalized evolution, *Abstract and Applied Analysis*, vol. 2012, Article ID 478531, 16 pages.

[8] Kudryashov, N. A. (2012). One method for finding exact solutions of nonlinear differential equations, *Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation*, 17(6), 2248-2253.

[9] Chen, Y., & Yan, Z. (2005). New exact solutions of (2+ 1)-dimensional Gardner equation via the new sine-Gordon equation expansion method. *Chaos, Solitons & Fractals*, 26(2), 399-406.

[10] Baskonus, H. M., Bulut, H., & Sulaiman, T. A. (2017). Investigation of various travelling wave solutions to the extended (2+1)-dimensional quantum ZK equation. *The European Physical Journal Plus*, 132(11), 482.

[11] Baskonus, H. M., Bulut, H., & Atangana, A. (2016). On the complex and hyperbolic structures of the longitudinal wave equation in a magneto-electro-elastic circular rod. *Smart Materials and Structures*, 25(3), 035022.

[12] He, J. H., & Wu, X. H. (2006). Exp-function method for nonlinear wave equations. *Chaos, Solitons & Fractals*, 30(3), 700-708.

[13] Xu, F. (2008). Application of Exp-function method to symmetric regularized long wave (SRLW) equation. *Physics Letters A*, 372(3), 252-257.

[14] Clarkson, P.A. (1986). The Painleve property, a modified Boussinesq equation and a modified Kadomtsev–Petviashvili equation. *Physica D: Nonlinear Phenomena*, 19(3), 447–450.

[15] Li, S., Zhang, W., & Bu, X. (2017). Periodic wave solutions and solitary wave solutions of generalized modified Boussinesq equation and evolution relationship between both solutions. *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, 449(1), 96-126.

[16] Levine, H.A., Sleeman, B.D. (1985). A note on the nonexistence of global solutions of initial boundary value problems for the Boussinesq equation, *Journal of Mathematical Analysis and Applications*, 107, 206–210.

[17] Naher, H., & Abdullah, F. A. (2013). New approach of (G′/G)-expansion method and new approach of generalized (G′/G)-expansion method for nonlinear evolution equation. A*merican Institute of Physics Advances*, 3(3), 032116.

***T. Akturk** is an assistant professor in Department of Mathematics and Science Education, at Ordu University; Ordu(Turkey He obtained his M.Sc. degree from Firat University and Ph.D. degree from Firat University. Him areas of interest are numerical solutions of the linear or nonlinear partial differential equations.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN: 2146-0957 eISSN: 2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.18-23 (2019)
https://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00561

RESEARCH ARTICLE

On the numerical investigations to the Cahn-Allen equation by using finite difference method

Asıf Yokuş [a] *, Hasan Bulut [b]

[a] *Department of Actuary, Faculty of Science, Firat University, Elazig, Turkey*
[b] *Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science, Firat University, Elazig, Turkey*
asfyokus@yahoo.com, hbulut@firat.edu.tr

ARTICLE INFO

Article history:
Received: 6 November 2017
Accepted: 23 January 2018
Available Online: 15 October 2018

Keywords:
Cahn-Allen equation
Finite Difference Method
Numerical Solution

AMS Classification 2010:
65L12, 74S20

ABSTRACT

In this study, by using the finite difference method (FDM for short) and operators, the discretized Cahn-Allen equation is obtained. New initial condition for the Cahn-Allen equation is introduced, considering the analytical solution given in *Application of the modified exponential function method to the Cahn-Allen equation, AIP Conference Proceedings 1798, 020033 [1]*. It is shown that the FDM is stable for the usage of the Fourier-Von Neumann technique. Accuracy of the method is analyzed in terms of the errors in L_2 and L_∞. Furthermore, the FDM is treated in order to obtain the numerical results and to construct a table including numerical and exact solutions as well as absolute measuring error. A comparison between the numerical and the exact solutions is supported with two and three dimensional graphics via Wolfram Mathematica 11.

1. Introduction

Russel has firstly studied the solitary wave [2,4] by following the water wave travelling through a tube. Investigation of the analytical and numerical solutions as well as other studies to the various class of nonlinear partial differential equations play an important role in the field of nonlinear sciences.

Most recently, some serious methods have been developed in order to solve nonlinear differential equation. For example, (G'/G)-expansion method [5,6], the improved (G'/G)-expansion method [7-9], the modified simple equation method [10], the Sumudu transform method [11-14], the Bäcklund transform method [15], the homotopy analysis method [16,17], the exponential function method [18-20], the modified exponential function method [21], generalized Bernoulli sub-ODE method [22], improved Bernoulli sub-ODE method [24-26], weak solutions[27] and galerkin method [28].

In the current work, we consider the Cahn-Allen equation given as:

$$u_t = u_{xx} - u^3 + u. \tag{1}$$

By using first integral method, Bulut et al. [23] have obtained some soliton to Eq. (1).

The discretize equation to the Cahn-Allen equation is derived by using the finite difference method (FDM) and its operators. We observe that the numerical method is stable with the Eq. (1) is stable when the Fourier-Von Neumann technique is utilzed. Furthermore, the accuracy in terms of the errors in and is analyzed. We then utilized the FDM in approximating exact and numerical solutions to Eq. (1). We present the computed exact and numerical approximations as well as the absolute error in tables. We compare the exact and numerical approximations calculated and support the comparison with some graphics plots, which are sketched by using the Wolfram Mathematica 11.

2. Fundamental properties of methods

2.1 Analysis of FDM

Some important notations are needed in order to describe the finite forward difference method, these are:

- Δx, which is the spatial step
- Δt, which is the time step

*Corresponding author

- $x_i = a + i\Delta x,\ i = 0,1,2,\ldots,N$ points, which are the coordinates of mesh and $N = \frac{b-a}{\Delta x},\ t_j = j\Delta t,\ j = 0,1,2,\ldots,M$ and $M = \frac{T}{\Delta t}$.
- The function $u(x,t)$ is the value of the solution at $u(x_i,t_j) \cong u_{i,j}$ (grid points), where $u_{i,j}$ will is the numerical approximations of the exact value of $u(x,t)$ at the points (x_i,t_j).

The difference operators are given as follows:

$$H_t u_{i,j} = u_{i,j+1} - u_{i,j}, \tag{2}$$

$$H_{xx} u_{i,j} = u_{i+1,j} - 2u_{i,j} + u_{i-1,j}. \tag{3}$$

Thus, the derivatives involve in Eq. (1) can be given in finite difference operators form as

$$\left.\frac{\partial u}{\partial t}\right|_{i,j} = \frac{H_t u_{i,j}}{\Delta t} + O(\Delta t^2), \tag{4}$$

$$\left.\frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2}\right|_{i,j} = \frac{H_{xx} u_{i,j}}{(\Delta x)^2} + O(\Delta x^2). \tag{5}$$

The difference operator form to Eq. (1) is given as

$$\frac{H_t u_{i,j}}{\Delta t} = \frac{H_{xx} u_{i,j}}{(\Delta x)^2} - \left(u_{i,j}\right)^3 + u_{i,j}. \tag{6}$$

Inserting Eq. (4) and (5) into Eq. (1), one can be written as indexed

$$\begin{aligned} u_{i+1,j} = -u_{i-1,j} + u_{i,j}\left(2 - (\Delta x)^2 - \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{\Delta t}\right) \\ + (\Delta x)^2 (u_{i,j})^3 + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{\Delta t} u_{i,j+1}, \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

where the initial values $u_{i,0} = u_0(x_i)$.

2.2. Consistency analysis

In this subsection, the consistency of Eq. (1) with difference method is discussed. Firstly, the Taylor series expansions as taking the following form [11-13],

$$u_{i,j+1} = u_{i,j} + \Delta t \frac{\partial u}{\partial t} + O(\Delta t)^2, \tag{8}$$

$$u_{i-1,j} = u_{i,j} - \Delta x \frac{\partial u}{\partial x} + (\Delta x)^2 \frac{\partial^2 u}{\partial x^2} - O(\Delta x^3). \tag{9}$$

One may define the operator L as

$$L = \frac{\partial}{\partial t} - \frac{\partial^2}{\partial x^2}.$$

The indexed form of operator L takes the following form:

$$L_{i,j} = \frac{H_t u_{i,j}}{\Delta t} - \frac{H_{xx} u_{i,j}}{(\Delta x)^2}. \tag{10}$$

Inserting the indexed form (8) and (9) into the equality (10) and making some theoretical calculations, then the approach will be the $\Delta t \to 0$ and $\Delta x \to 0$. Therefore, the equality (10) will be same as left hand side of the Eq. (1). Thus, it can be seen that the Eq. (1) is consistent with FDM.

2.3 Truncation error and stability analysis

In this subsection, the stability and error analysis for the FDM are studied. For the stability, if there is a perturbation in the initial condition and then the small change would not cause the large error in the numerical solution. Simply, stability means that the scheme does not amplify errors and the error caused by a small perturbation in the numerical solution remains bound.

Theorem 1. The truncation error of the finite different method to the Eq. (1) is $(\Delta x)^2\left[O(\Delta t)^2 + O(\Delta x)^3\right]$.

Proof. Inserting Eq. (4) and (5) into Eq. (1) gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{H_t u_{i,j}}{\Delta t} + O(\Delta t)^2 = \left(\frac{H_{xx} u_{i,j}}{(\Delta x)^2} + O(\Delta x)^3\right) \\ -\left(u_{i,j}\right)^3 + u_{i,j}. \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

Inserting the equalities (2) and (3) into the Eq. (11) and do some necessary manipulations, then we obtain the following equality

$$\begin{aligned} u_{i+1,j} = -u_{i-1,j} + u_{i,j}\left(2 - (\Delta x)^2 - \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{\Delta t}\right) \\ + (\Delta x)^2 (u_{i,j})^3 + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{\Delta t} u_{i,j+1} \\ + (\Delta x)^2 (O(\Delta t)^2 + O(\Delta x)^3). \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

Utilizing Eq. (12), one may write numerical solution $\hat{U}$ as

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{U} = -u_{i-1,j} + u_{i,j}\left(2 - (\Delta x)^2 - \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{\Delta t}\right) \\ + (\Delta x)^2 (u_{i,j})^3 + \frac{(\Delta x)^2}{\Delta t} u_{i,j+1}, \end{aligned}$$

and the truncation error E as

$$E = (\Delta x)^2\left[O(\Delta t)^2 + O(\Delta x)^3\right].$$

Moreover, if Δt and Δx are considered as small as necessary, truncation error will be obviously very small. The limit of E can be written as

$$\lim_{\substack{\Delta x \to 0 \\ \Delta t \to 0}} E = 0 \cdot$$

We can see that if Δt and Δx are configured for a value close to zero $\delta > 0$, the following inequality is gotten

$$|E| < \delta ,$$

which proves the stability of the FDM.

Theorem 2. The FDM in respect to the Cahn-Allen equation is unconditionally stable.

Proof. We consider the Von Neumann's Stability of the finite difference method for the Cahn-Allen. Let

$$u_{i,j} = u(i\Delta x, j\Delta t) = u(p,q) = \varepsilon^q e^{I\xi p}, \xi \in [-\pi, \pi], \tag{13}$$

where $p = i\Delta x,\ q = j\Delta t$ and $I = \sqrt{-1}$. Inserting Eq. (2), (3) and (13) into the equality (6), we can obtain

$$\varepsilon \to 0,$$

According to the Von Neumann's Stability analysis [29], the FDM is stable if $|\varepsilon| \leq 1$. Hence, the FDM is unconditionally stable with the Cahn-Allen equation.

2.4. L_2 and L_∞ Error Norms

To show how close the numerical approximations are close to the exact approximations the L_2 and L_∞ error norms are utilized [30].

The L_2 error norm is defined as [30].

$$L_2 = \left\| u^{exact} - u^{numeric} \right\|_2 = \sqrt{h \sum_{j=0}^{N} \left| u_j^{exact} - u_j^{numeric} \right|^2},$$

and L_∞ error norm is defined as [30]

$$L_\infty = \left\| u^{exact} - u^{numeric} \right\|_\infty = \underset{j}{Max} \left| u_j^{exact} - u_j^{numeric} \right|.$$

3. Application

In this section, we apply Finite Difference Method for Eq. (1) and consider numerical experiments. Recall the following hyperbolic function solution for Eq. (1) given in [1]:

$$u_1(x,t) = -\frac{\left(3A_1 + \sqrt{9A_1^2 + 24cA_0B_1}\right)\left(-1 + Tanh[f(x,t)]\right)}{6A_1 + 2\sqrt{9A_1^2 + 24cA_0B_1} - 6B_1\left(1 + Tanh[f(x,t)]\right)}, \tag{14}$$

where $f(x,t) = \dfrac{3c_1 - 3ct + \sqrt{2}cx}{4c}$ and

$\mu \neq 0,$

$$\frac{\left(3A_1 - 3B_1 + \sqrt{9A_1^2 + 24cA_0B_1}\right)^2}{4c^2B_1^2} - \frac{3\left(4cA_0B_1 + (A_1 - B_1)\left(3A_1 + \sqrt{9A_1^2 + 24cA_0B_1}\right)\right)}{2c^2B_1^2} > 0.$$

If we put

$c = 0.6,\ A_0 = -3,\ B_1 = -5,\ A_1 = -1, c_1 = 0.1,$

$0 < x < 1$ and $0 < t < 1$ for Eq. (14), the initial condition is

$$u_0(x) = u(x,0) = -\frac{\left(3A_1 + \sqrt{9A_1^2 + 24cA_0B_1}\right)\left(-1 + \text{Tanh}\left[\frac{3c_1 + \sqrt{2}cx}{4c}\right]\right)}{6A_1 + 2\sqrt{9A_1^2 + 24cA_0B_1} - 6B_1\left(1 + \text{Tanh}\left[\frac{3c_1 + \sqrt{2}cx}{4c}\right]\right)}, \tag{15}$$

and under the above assumptions the exact solution of the Eq. (1) is as following

$$u(x,t) = -\frac{12\left(-1 + \text{Tanh}[0.416667(0.3 - 1.8t + 0.848528x)]\right)}{24 + 30\left(1 + \text{Tanh}[0.416667(0.3 - 1.8t + 0.848528x)]\right)}. \tag{16}$$

Eq. (1) can be written as indexed with the help of finite difference operators

$$u_{i+1,j} = -0.0001\left[10000\, u_{i-1,j} - 19999\, u_{i,j} - u_{i,j}^3 - 100\left(-u_{i,j} + u_{i,j+1}\right)\right].$$

A comparison of the obtained exact and numerical solutions are tabulate in Table 1.

Table 1. Numerical and exact solutions of equation (1) and absolute errors when $\Delta x = 0.01$.

x_i	t_j	*Numerical solution*	*Exact Solution*	*Absolute Error*
0.00	0.01	0.184247	0.184258	1.06626×10^{-5}
0.01	0.01	0.183187	0.183197	1.06500×10^{-5}
0.02	0.01	0.182131	0.182142	1.06370×10^{-5}
0.03	0.01	0.181080	0.181091	1.06236×10^{-5}
0.04	0.01	0.180034	0.180044	1.06098×10^{-5}
0.05	0.01	0.178992	0.170900	1.05956×10^{-5}
0.06	0.01	0.177955	0.177966	1.05810×10^{-5}

Table 2. L_2 and L_∞ error norm when $0 \leq h \leq 1$ and $0 \leq x \leq 1$

$\Delta x = \Delta t$	L_2	L_∞	0.2
2.01978×10^{-3}		4.317×10^{-3}	0.1
6.96142×10^{-4}		1.074×10^{-3}	
0.05	2.42301×10^{-4}	2.670×10^{-4}	
0.01	1.04962×10^{-5}	1.100×10^{-5}	

Table2 shows that when Δx and Δt are small, the L_2 and L_∞ error norm are decreasing. From Table 1-2 it is easily seen that results are in good agreement with the exact solution.

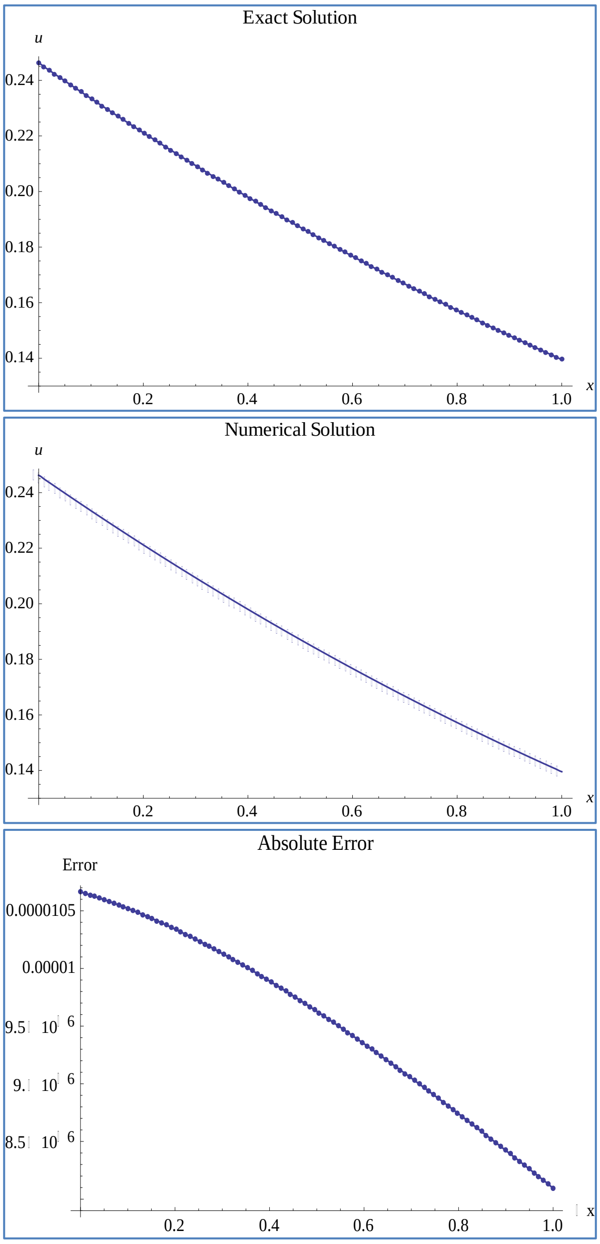


Figure 1. Numerical solution of Eq. (1) for finite difference method

Fig. 1 displays the physical behavior of the solution and shows that the exact approximations values are almost close to the numerically computed values. It is known that the truncation error depends on the choice of Δx and Δt. Choosing the values to be very small gives rise to very small truncation error. This behavior of the numerical and exact solutions can be seen in the graphs above when the values of $\Delta x = \Delta t = 0.01$.

4. Remark

The numerical results for example 1 have been obtained by using the programming language Wolfram Mathematica package. To the best of our knowledge, these numerical solutions have not been published previously, and these results are new numerical solutions for (1).

5. Conclusion

In this study, the FDM is used in approximating the numerical solutions to the Cahn-Allen equation. FDM is a useful numerical scheme for approximating the solutions of various nonlinear differential equations by defining suitable differential operators. The initial condition for the Cahn-Allen equation is obtained using the new analytical solution. The Cahn-Allen equation is written as indexed with the help of finite difference operators. Error analysis of the index equation was analyzed. Cahn-Allen equation is discussed with an example and error estimates obtained for the FDM. Furthermore, the behavior of potentials *u* and absolute error are examined graphically.

References

[1] Bulut, H. (2017). Application of the modified exponential function method to the Cahn-Allen equation, *AIP Conference Proceedings* 1798, 020033.

[2] Villarreal, J. M. (2014). *Approximate solutions to the allen-cahn equation using the finite difference method*, Thesis, B.S., Texas A & M International University.

[3] Xue, C. X., Pan, E. & Zhang, S. Y. (2011). Solitary waves in a magneto-electro-elastic circular rod, *Smart Materials and Structures*, 20(105010), 1-7.

[4] Russell, J. S. (1844). Report on waves, *14th Mtg of the British Association for the Advancement of Science*.

[5] Yang, Y. J. (2013). New application of the $(G'/G,1/G)$-expansion method to KP equation, *Applied Mathematical Sciences*, 7(20), 959-967.

[6] Yokus, A. (2011). *Solutions of some nonlinear partial differential equations and comparison of their solutions*, Ph.D. Thesis, Firat University.

[7] Guo, S. & Zhou, Y. (2011). The extended (G'/G)-expansion method and its applications to the Whitham-Broer-Like equations and coupled Hirota-Satsuma KdV equations, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 215 (9) 3214-3221.

[8] Yokus, A. (2017). Numerical solution for space and time fractional order Burger type equation, *Alexandria Engineering Journal*, https://doi.org/10.1016/j.aej.2017.05.028.

[9] Yokus, A. & Kaya, D. (2015). Conservation laws and a new expansion method for sixth order

Boussinesq equation, *AIP Conference Proceedings* 1676, 020062.

[10] Jawad, A. J. M., Petkovic, M. D. & Biswas, A. (2010). Modified simple equation method for nonlinear evolution equations, *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 217, 869-877.

[11] Su, L., Wang, W. & Yang, Z. (2009). Finite difference approximations for the fractional advection–diffusion equation, *Physics Letters A* 373, 4405–4408.

[12] Odibat, Z. M. & Shawagfeh, N. T. (2007). Generalized Taylor's formula. *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 186 286-293.2.

[13] Liu, F., Zhuang, P., Anh, V., Turner, I. & Burrage K. (2007). Stability and convergence of the difference methods for the space-time fractional advection–diffusion equation, *Applied Mathematics and Computation* 191, 2–20.

[14] Su, L., Wang, W. & Yang, Z. (2009). Finite difference approximations for the fractional advection–diffusion equation, *Physics Letters A*, 373, 4405–4408.

[15] Miura, M. R. (1978). Backlund transformation, *Springer, Berlin*.

[16] Motsa, S. S., Sibanda, P., Awad, F.G. & Shateyi, S. (2010). A new spectral-homotopy analysis method for the MHD Jeffery-Hamel problem, *Computers & Fluids*, 39(7), 1219-1225.

[17] Domairry, G., Mohsenzadeh, A. & Famouri, M. (2009). The application of homotopy analysis method to solve nonlinear differential equation governing Jeffery-Hamel flow, *Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation*, 14(1), 85-95.

[18] Joneidi, A.A., Domairry, G. & Babaelahi, M. (2010). Three analytical methods applied to Jeffery-Hamel flow, *Communications in Nonlinear Science and Numerical Simulation*, 15(11), 3423–3434.

[19] Alam, M. N., Hafez, M. G., Akbar, M. A. & Roshid, H. O. (2015). Exact Solutions to the (2+1)-Dimensional Boussinesq Equation via exp ($\Phi(\eta)$)-Expansion Method, *Journal of Scientific Research*, 7(3), 1-10.

[20] Roshid, H. O. & Rahman, Md. A. (2014). The exp ($-\Phi(\eta)$)-expansion method with application in the (1+1)-dimensional classical Boussinesq equations, *Results in Physics*, 4, 150–155.

[21] Abdelrahman, M. A. E., Zahran, E. H. M. & Khater, M. M. A. (2015). The exp($-\phi(\xi)$)-Expansion Method and Its Application for Solving Nonlinear Evolution Equations, *International Journal of Modern Nonlinear Theory and Application*, 4, 37-47.

[22] Baskonus, H. M., & Bulut, H. (2015). On the complex structures of Kundu-Eckhaus equation via improved Bernoulli sub-equation function method. *Waves in Random and Complex Media*, 25(4), 720-728.

[23] Bulut, H., Atas, S. S., & Baskonus, H. M. (2016). Some novel exponential function structures to the Cahn–Allen equation. *Cogent Physics*, 3(1), 1240886.

[24] Wang, M., Li, X., & Zhang, J. (2008). The (G′ G)-expansion method and travelling wave solutions of nonlinear evolution equations in mathematical physics. *Physics Letters A*, 372(4), 417-423.

[25] Feng, J., Li, W., & Wan, Q. (2011). Using G′ G-expansion method to seek the traveling wave solution of Kolmogorov–Petrovskii–Piskunov equation. *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 217(12), 5860-5865.

[26] Yokus, A., Baskonus, H. M., Sulaiman, T. A., & Bulut, H. (2018). Numerical simulation and solutions of the two-component second order KdV evolutionarysystem. *Numerical Methods for Partial Differential Equations*, 34(1), 211-227.

[27] Şener, S. Ş., Saraç, Y., & Subaşı, M. (2013). Weak solutions to hyperbolic problems with inhomogeneous Dirichlet and Neumann boundary conditions. *Applied Mathematical Modelling*, 37(5), 2623-2629.

[28] Subaşı, M., Şener, S. Ş., & Saraç, Y. (2011). A procedure for the Galerkin method for a vibrating system. *Computers & Mathematics with Applications*, 61(9), 2854-2862.

[29] Rezzolla, L. (2011). Numerical methods for the solution of partial differential equations. *Lecture Notes for the COMPSTAR School on Computational Astrophysics*, 8-13.

[30] Yokus, A., & Kaya, D. (2017). Numerical and exact solutions for time fractional Burgers' equation. *Journal of Nonlinear Sciences and Applications*, 10(7), 3419-3428.

Asıf Yokuş *is currently doctor of Actuary in Firat University. His research interests include finite different method, collocation method, analytical methods for nonlinear differential equations and numerical solutions of the partial differential equations.*

Hasan Bulut *is currently professor of Mathematics in Firat University. His research interests include stochastic differential equations, fluid and heat mechanics, finite element method, analytical methods for nonlinear differential equations and numerical solutions of the partial differential equations.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications (http://ijocta.balikesir.edu.tr)

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.24-35 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00423

RESEARCH ARTICLE

Optimal control analysis of deterministic and stochastic epidemic model with media awareness programs

Shrishail Ramappa Gani, Shreedevi Veerabhadrappa Halawar*

Department of Statistics, Karnatak Arts College, Dharwad, India
gani.sr.kcd@gmail.com, shreedevihalawar@gmail.com

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 29 November 2016
Accepted 30 July 2017
Available 01 November 2018

Keywords:
Epidemics
Awareness campaigns
Optimal control theory
Stochastic perturbation

AMS Classification 2010:
93A30, 92D25, 49J15

ABSTRACT

The present study considered the optimal control analysis of both deterministic differential equation modeling and stochastic differential equation modeling of infectious disease by taking effects of media awareness programs and treatment of infectives on the epidemic into account. Optimal media awareness strategy under the quadratic cost functional using Pontrygin's Maximum Principle and Hamiltonian-Jacobi-Bellman equation are derived for both deterministic and stochastic optimal problem respectively. The Hamiltonian-Jacobi-Bellman equation is used to solve stochastic system, which is fully non-linear equation, however it ought to be pointed out that for stochastic optimality system it may be difficult to obtain the numerical results. For the analysis of the stochastic optimality system, the results of deterministic control problem are used to find an approximate numerical solution for the stochastic control problem. Outputs of the simulations shows that media awareness programs place important role in the minimization of infectious population with minimum cost.

1. Introduction

Epidemiology is the study of the spread of diseases with the objective to trace factors, which are responsible for or contribute to their occurrence. Mathematical modeling of the spread of infectious diseases continues to become an important tool in understanding the dynamics of diseases and in decision making processes regarding diseases intervention programs for disease in many countries. Controlling infectious diseases has been an increasingly complex issue in recent years. Media awareness program is an important strategy for the elimination of infectious diseases [1, 2]. The field of stochastic modeling of biological and ecological systems [3] is currently undergoing considerable development as of complex stochastic models by simulation methods are more feasible. Mathematicians have contributed a range of papers which can be found in the literature of probability theory and statistical physics characterizing the theoretical properties of a large variety of stochastic models.

Optimal control theory has found wide-ranging applications in biological and ecological problems. Specifically, there have been various studies of epidemiological models, where optimal control methods have been applied [4, 5]. Optimal control theory is a systematic approach to controller design where by the desired performance objectives are encoded in a cost function, which is subsequently optimized to determine the desired controller [6]. There are two underlying and universal themes i.e., dynamic programming and filtering. Dynamic programming is one of the fundamental tool of optimal control, the other being Pontryagins principle. Dynamic programming is a means by which candidates optimal control can be verified optimally. The procedure is to find a suitable solution to dynamic programming equation (DPE), which denotes the optimal performance and to use it to compare the performance candidates control may be determined from Pontryagins Maximum Principle [7] and later developed by Fleming and Rishel [8] is successfully applied

*Corresponding Author

in a number of studies, to explore optimal control theory in some mathematical models for infectious diseases. Epidemic models are inevitably affected by environmental white noise, which is an important component in realism, because it can provide an additional degree of realism in comparison to their deterministic counterparts. Many stochastic model for epidemic populations have been developed in literature [9,10]. For SDE models in epidemiology, optimal control has not been studied extensively. One of the reasons for this could very well be the difficulty with high dimensionality of the resulting partial differential equation (PDE) for the value function (See, Sulem and Tapiero [11]), for instance, a four-compartmental SIVR model such as in [12, 13] could easily lead to a PDE having the time variable together with three state variables. In control problems, the aim of the study is to characterize the control variable on a finite time interval, which minimizes the number of infected individuals balanced against the cost of controlling the epidemic.

In the present study it is proposed and developed optimal control policies for deterministic and stochastic SIR epidemic model with awareness programs by media. The aim of this model is to depict how the provision of awareness modifies the contact structure and thereby affects the future course of an epidemic. In the absence of any pharmaceutical intervention, to control the spread of disease at the population level needs to change the individual activities, which in turn depends on information being provided to the individuals about the epidemic. If the susceptibles are aware about the preventive measures for emergent disease, they are likely to modify their activities. The study contracts on disease which spread through interaction between susceptible and infective, i.e. direct contact. Therefore to control the outbreak of any epidemic, it is informed to avoid contact, by which some can contract infection and minimize the possibility of contracting infection. In vision of this, it is assumed that when awareness is propagated by media about the disease, susceptible form a separate class within the population i.e., to avoid being in contact with other members of the population. Another important aspect of this study is to check whether size of the infectious population is directly proportional to awareness campaigns by media. The explicit inclusion of awareness campaigns by media in the modeling process are assumed to be proportional to the size of infectious individuals in the population. This study differs from other epidemic modeling by performing the stochastic optimal control analysis, which is rarely studied by researchers like [6, 14] in the field of epidemics and by including the transmission of infection in two modes in the model, A.K. Misra [1], has discussed the epidemic model with media awareness and stability analysis for deterministic model by considering single transmission parameter β, in the present study, the transmission of infection is considered by two modes i.e. transmission between unaware susceptible and infectives and the transmission between hospitalized individuals and unaware susceptible denoted by by β_1 and β_2 respectively. It is assumed that the rate of contact of susceptible with infectives who are on treatment is much less than the infectives who are not on treatment ($\beta_2 \ll \beta_1$). This is so because on hospitalization of infectives for treatment their contact with susceptible group of a population is reduced and may contribute little to the spread of infection. In the numerical analysis of the deterministic and corresponding stochastic model, it is discussed the comparison of deterministic and stochastic solution and also shown, how the control variable vary for different values of a parameters. The rest of the work is organized as follows: Section 2 deals with deterministic model framework and optimal control analysis, while in Section 3 formulation of stochastic model with constant controls and optimal control analysis is carried out. Section 4, consist of numerical simulations and discussion of results and principle findings of the paper are discussed in Section 5.

2. Deterministic Model

In this section, deterministic nonlinear SIR model is considered by taking media awareness and treatment into account. The variables and parameters of the model are described in Table 1 and Table 2 respectively.

Table 1. Description of variables of the model.

Variables	Explanation
$X(t)$	The number of susceptible at time t;
$Y(t)$	The number of infectives at time t;
$X_m(t)$	The number of aware susceptible at time t;
$T(t)$	The infectives who are on treatment at time t;
$Z(t)$	The recovered population at time t;
$M(t)$	The cumulative density of awareness programs driven by media in the region at time t;

To model the situation considered a region with total population $N(t)$ at any instant of time t. By taking into account the aforementioned considerations, the system of equations that capture the dynamics of the infectious disease is designed and the ordinary differential equations of the system (1) is as follows.

Table 2. Description of parameters of the model

Parameters	Description
β_1	The contact rate of susceptible with infectives;
β_2	The contact rate of susceptible with hospitalized infectives;
Q	The constant rate of immigration of susceptible;
π	The dissemination rate of awareness among susceptible due to which they form a separate group;
π_0	The rate of transfer of aware susceptible to susceptible;
γ	The recovery rate;
δ	The disease induced death rate;
δ_1	The natural death rate from each class;
σ_1	The modification parameter due to treatment for recovery;
σ_2	The modification parameter for disease induced death rate due to treatment;
μ	The rate at which awareness programs has being implemented;
μ_0	The depletion rate of awareness programs due to infectiveness, social problems in population;
γ_0	The loss rate of immunity of recovered individuals;
ϕ	The rate at which infective are hospitalized for treatment;

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dX}{dt} &= Q - \beta_1 XY - \beta_2 XT - \pi XM + \pi_0 X_m \\
&\quad + \gamma_0 Z - \delta_1 X \\
\frac{dY}{dt} &= \beta_1 XY + \beta_2 XT - (\delta + \gamma + \phi + \delta_1)Y \\
\frac{dX_m}{dt} &= \pi XM - \pi_0 X_m - \delta_1 X_m \qquad (1)\\
\frac{dT}{dt} &= \phi Y - \sigma_1 \gamma T - \delta_1 T - \sigma_2 \delta T \\
\frac{dZ}{dt} &= \gamma Y + \sigma_1 \gamma T - \gamma_0 Z - \delta_1 Z \\
\frac{dM}{dt} &= \mu(Y+T) - \mu_0 M
\end{aligned}$$

where, $X > 0, Y > 0, X_m \geq 0, T \geq 0, Z \geq 0$ and $M \geq 0$.

To show the existence of the feasible set of a system (1) which attracts all solutions initiation in the interior of positive orthant, it has to prove that the system (1) is dissipative, i.e., all solutions are uniformly bounded in a proper subset $\Omega \in \Re^6_+$. Let $(X, Y, X_m, T, Z, M) \in \Re^6_+$ be any solution with non-negative initial conditions. By adding first five equations of system (1) it is obtained

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dN}{dt} &= Q - \delta Y - \sigma_2 \delta T - \delta_1 N \\
&\leq Q - \delta_1 N \qquad (2)
\end{aligned}$$

After solving equation (2), we have

$$N(t) \leq N(0)e^{-\delta_1 t} + \frac{Q}{\delta_1}(1 - e^{-\delta_1 t}) \qquad (3)$$

where $N(0)$ is the sum of initial values $X(0)$, $Y(0)$, $X_m(0)$, $T(0)$, $Z(0)$. Now from equation (3) as $\lim t \to \infty$, $N \to \frac{Q}{\delta_1}$, then $\frac{Q}{\delta_1}$ is the upper bound of N. Also from last equation of system (1), it is shown

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{dM}{dt} &= \mu(Y+T) - \mu_0 M \\
\frac{dM}{dt} &\leq \frac{\mu Q}{\delta_1} - \mu_0 M \qquad (4)\\
\Rightarrow 0 &< M(t) \leq M(0)e^{-\mu_0 t} + \frac{\mu Q}{\mu_0 \delta_1}(1 - e^{-\mu_0 t})
\end{aligned}$$

and above result that $\frac{Q}{\delta_1}$ is the upper bound of N it can deduced that $\lim t \to \infty$ $M \to \frac{\mu Q}{\mu_0 \delta_1}$. Therefore the region of attraction is given by the set:

$$\begin{aligned}
\Omega = \Big\{ &(X,\ Y,\ X_m,\ T,\ Z,\ M) \in \Re^6_+ : \qquad (5)\\
&0 \leq X,\ Y,\ X_m,\ T,\ Z \leq N \leq \frac{Q}{\delta_1}, \\
&0 \leq M \leq \frac{\mu Q}{\mu_0 \delta_1} \Big\}
\end{aligned}$$

and attracts all solutions initiation in the interior of positive orthant.

2.1. Deterministic optimal control problem

In this section it is formulated and solved for deterministic version of control problem. The control variable in the model system (1), where implementation rate of awareness campaigns (μ) is represented by a Lebesgue measurable function

$u(t)$, on a finite time interval $[0,\ T_f]$. In the model $u(t)$ represents the some part of susceptible population has media awareness at time t. Our aim is to obtain optimal media awareness programs $u^*(t)$, which minimizes the number of infectives and on the other hand cost of infection (treatment) during the infectious period $[0,\ T_f]$. To investigate the optimal level of efforts that would be needed to control the disease, the objective function J is formed. Since objective of the spread of disease control is to decrease the infected individuals and infected individuals who are on treatment and increase the aware susceptible population. Hence the problem of minimizing the cost functional is,

$$J(u) = \int_0^{T_f} \left\{ AY + BT - CX_m + \frac{C_1}{2}u^2 \right\} dt \tag{6}$$

subject to

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dX}{dt} &= Q - \beta_1 XY - \beta_2 XT - \pi XM + \pi_0 X_m \\ &\quad + \gamma_0 Z - \delta_1 X \\ \frac{dY}{dt} &= \beta_1 XY + \beta_2 XT - (\delta + \gamma + \phi + \delta_1) Y \\ \frac{dX_m}{dt} &= \pi XM - \pi_0 X_m - \delta_1 X_m \\ \frac{dT}{dt} &= \phi Y - \sigma_1 \gamma T - \delta_1 T - \sigma_2 \delta T \\ \frac{dZ}{dt} &= \gamma Y + \sigma_1 \gamma T - \gamma_0 Z - \delta_1 Z \\ \frac{dM}{dt} &= u(t)(Y + T) - \mu_0 M \end{aligned} \tag{7}$$

where, $X > 0,\ Y > 0,\ X_m \geq 0,\ T \geq 0,\ Z \geq 0$ and $M \geq 0$. A, B and C are the positive weights. The term $\frac{C_1}{2}$ is the cost associated with $u(t)$. An optimal control $u^*(t)$ is such that

$$J(u^*(t)) = \min_{u \in U} J(u(t)) \tag{8}$$

where control set is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} U = \{u(t) : 0 \leq u(t) \leq 1,\ 0 \leq t \leq T, \\ u(t) \textit{ is Lebesgue measurable}\}. \end{aligned} \tag{9}$$

2.2. Existence of deterministic optimal control problem

The existence of optimal control can be proved by using the result from Fleming and Rishel [8] .

Theorem 1. *For the optimal control problem (6) and (7) on a fixed interval* $[0,\ T_f]$*, there exist an optimal control* $u^*(t) \in U$*.*

Proof. The boundedness of solution of system (7) asserts the existence of solution to control system using results by [15], therefore, set of controls and corresponding state variables are non- empty. The control set is closed and convex by definition. The solution of system (7) are bounded above by linear function in control and state. The integrand in cost functional, $AY + BT - CX_m + \frac{C_1}{2}u^2$, is convex on control set U. Further, there exists $p,\ q > 0$ and $b > 1$ such that, $AY + BT - CX_m + \frac{C_1}{2}u^2 \geq p + q|u(t)|^b$, where p depends upon the upper bound of $Y(t),\ T(t)$ and $X_m(t)$ and $q = C_1$. Hence the existence of an optimal control is established. □

2.3. Characterization of optimal control

The Pontryagin's Maximum principle converts the problem of minimizing the cost functional subject to state variables into minimizing the Hamiltonian with respect to the controls at each time t. For the purpose of simplicity it is introduced the functions f_1, f_2, f_3, f_4, f_5 and f_6, to right side expressions of equations (7).

$$\begin{aligned} f_1(t) &= Q - \beta_1 XY - \beta_2 XT - \pi XM \\ &\quad + \pi_0 X_m + \gamma_0 Z - \delta_1 X \\ f_2(t) &= \beta_1 XY + \beta_2 XT - (\delta + \gamma + \phi + \delta_1) Y \\ f_3(t) &= \pi XM - \pi_0 X_m - \delta_1 X_m \\ f_4(t) &= \phi Y - \sigma_1 \gamma T - \delta_1 T - \sigma_2 \delta T \\ f_5(t) &= \gamma Y + \sigma_1 \gamma T - \gamma_0 Z - \delta_1 Z \\ f_6(t) &= u(t)(Y + T) - \mu_0 M \end{aligned} \tag{10}$$

Therefore Hamiltonian H is,

$$\begin{aligned} H &= AY + BT - CX_m + \frac{C_1}{2}u^2 \\ &+ \lambda_1 f_1(t) + \lambda_2 f_2(t) + \lambda_3 f_3(t) \\ &+ \lambda_4 f_4(t) + \lambda_5 f_5(t) + \lambda_6 f_6(t) \end{aligned} \tag{11}$$

where λ_i for $i = 1, 2...6$ are adjoint functions associated with their respective state variables. The necessary conditions that an optimal control problem must satisfy Hamiltonian H comes from the Pontryagins maximum principle [7]. Given an optimal control and corresponding states, there exists adjoint variable λ_i satisfying the following equations:

$$\begin{aligned}
\lambda_1' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial X} &= \beta_1 Y(\lambda_1-\lambda_2)+\beta_2 T(\lambda_1-\lambda_2)\\
&\quad +\pi M(\lambda_1-\lambda_3)+\lambda_1\delta_1\\
\lambda_2' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial Y} &= -A+\beta_1 X(\lambda_1-\lambda_2)+\lambda_2(\delta_+\delta_1)\\
&\quad +\phi(\lambda_2-\lambda_4)+\gamma(\lambda_2-\lambda_5)-\lambda_6\mu\\
\lambda_3' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial X_m} &= C+\pi_0(\lambda_1+\lambda_3)+\lambda_3\delta_1\\
\lambda_4' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial T} &= -B+\beta_2 X(\lambda_1-\lambda_2)+\lambda_4\sigma_2\delta\\
&\quad +\sigma_1\gamma(\lambda_4-\lambda_5)+\lambda_4\delta_1-\lambda_6\mu\\
\lambda_5' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial Z} &= \lambda_5(\gamma_0+\delta_1)-\lambda_1\gamma_0\\
\lambda_6' = -\frac{\partial H}{\partial M} &= \pi X(\lambda_1-\lambda_3)+\lambda_6\mu_0 \qquad (12)
\end{aligned}$$

with transversality conditions $\lambda_i(T) = 0$, for $i = 1, 2...6$. The transversality conditions are zero because the objective functional is independent of states at the final time.

The Hamiltonian is minimized with respect to $u(t)$ at the optimal value $u^*(t)$. Since

$$\begin{aligned}
H &= AY+BT-CX_m+\frac{C_1}{2}u^2\\
&\quad +\lambda_6\{u(t)(Y+T)\}+terms\ without\ u(t),
\end{aligned}$$

differentiating H with respect to u and according to Pontrygins Maximum Principle, the unrestricted optimal control $u^*(t)$ satisfies $\frac{\partial H}{\partial u} = 0$ at $u(t) = u^*(t)$. So it is given by

$$u^*(t) = \min\left[\max\left(0, -\frac{\lambda_6(Y+T)}{C_1}\right), 1\right] \qquad (13)$$

Therefore we have the following theorem.

Theorem 2. *The optimal control $u^*(t)$ of a system (7), which minimizes the objective functional (6) is characterized by (13).*

Due to a priori boundedness of the state and adjoint system functions and the resulting Lipschitz structure of the ODE's, it is obtained the uniqueness of the optimal control for small T. The state system coupled with the adjoint system, with the initial conditions, the transversality condition together with the above characterization of the control form the optimality system.

3. Stochastic Model

In this section a non-linear stochastic SIR type epidemic model is proposed by introducing a noise in system (7), and transformed the deterministic problem into a corresponding stochastic problem. The noise can induce non-trivial effects in physical and biological systems. The presence of noise source modifies the behavior of corresponding deterministic evolution of the system to stochastic system. The real spread of infectious disease, due to variation in the environment and the weather will exhibit some kinds of random fluctuation in the infection and other variables. Here it is considered the perturbed transmission coefficients β_1 and β_2 in system (7), and hence the infection rate is replaced by

$$\beta_1 \to \beta_1 + \epsilon\eta(t) \qquad \beta_2 \to \beta_2 + \epsilon\eta(t) \quad (14)$$

where $\eta(t)$ represents the Gaussian white noise with zero mean and unit co-variance and ϵ is a constant. The relation between the Wiener process $W(t)$ and Gaussian white noise $\eta(t)$ such that $dW(t) = \eta(t)dt$, then the stochastic version of the corresponding deterministic system (7) takes the following form:

$$\begin{aligned}
dX &= [Q-\beta_1 XY-\beta_2 XT-\pi XM+\pi_0 X_m\\
&\quad +\gamma_0 Z-\delta_1 X]\,dt-\epsilon X(Y+T)dW(t)\\
dY &= [\beta_1 XY+\beta_2 XT-(\delta+\gamma+\phi+\delta_1)Y]dt\\
&\quad +\epsilon X(Y+T)dW(t)\\
dX_m &= [\pi XM-\pi_0 X_m-\delta_1 X_m]dt\\
dT &= [\phi Y-\sigma_1\gamma T-\delta_1 T-\sigma_2\delta T]dt\\
dZ &= [\gamma Y+\sigma_1\gamma T-\gamma_0 Z-\delta_1 Z]dt\\
dM &= [u(t)(Y+T)-\mu_0 M]dt \qquad (15)
\end{aligned}$$

where, $X > 0,\ Y > 0,\ X_m \geq 0,\ T \geq 0,\ Z \geq 0$ and $M \geq 0$.

In this process, it is assumed that $W(t)$ is one dimensional real Wiener process defined on a filtered complete probability space $(\Omega, \mathcal{F}, \{\mathcal{F}_t\}_{t\geq 0}, P)$. For some $n \in N$, some $x_0 \in \Re^n$, and an n-dimensional Wiener process $W(t)$, consider the general n-dimensional stochastic differential equation,

$$dx(t) = F(x(t),t)dt + G(x(t),t)dW(t), \quad x(0) = x_0. \qquad (16)$$

A solution to the above equation is denoted by $x(t, x_0)$. It is assumed that $F(t, 0) = G(t, 0) = 0\ \forall\ t \geq 0$, so that the origin point is an equilibrium of (16). Let us denote by L the differential operator associated with the function displayed in

(16), defined for a function $U(t,x) \in C^{1,2}(\Re X \Re^n)$ by

$$LU = \frac{\partial U}{\partial t} + F^{trp}\frac{\partial U}{\partial x} + \frac{1}{2}Trc\left[G^{trp}\frac{\partial^2 U}{\partial x^2}G\right]. \quad (17)$$

Here trp denotes the transpose and Trc means trace of a matrix. In view of Ito's formula, if $x(t) \in \Re^d$, then $dU(x,t) = LU(x,t)dt + V_x(x,t)g(x,t)dW(t)$.

3.1. Existence and uniqueness of positive solutions

In this section, using Lyapunov analysis method (mentioned in refs. [16,17]), we show that the solution of system (15) is positive and global.

Theorem 3. *There is a unique solution $X(t),\ Y(t)\ X_m(t),\ T(t),\ Z(t),\ M(t)$ of system (15) on $t \geq 0$ for any initial value $(X(0),\ Y(0)\ X_m(0),\ T(0),\ Z(0),\ M(0)) \in \Re^6_+$ and the solution will remain in $\Re^6_+$ with probability 1, namely, $(X(t),\ Y(t)\ X_m(t),\ T(t),\ Z(t),\ M(t)) \in \Re^6_+$ for all $t \geq 0$ almost surely.*

Proof. Since the coefficient of the equation are locally Lipschitz continuous for any given initial value

$$(X(0),\ Y(0),\ X_m(0),\ H(0),\ Z(0),\ M(0)) \in \Re^6_+,$$

there is a unique local solution

$$X(t), Y(t), X_m(t), T(t), Z(t), M(t)$$

on $t \in [0, \tau_e)$, where τ_e is the explosion time (see Ref. [18]). To show that this solution is global, we need to show that $\tau_e = \infty$ a.s. Let $k_0 \geq 0$ be sufficiently large so that $X(0), Y(0), X_m(0), T(0), Z(0)$ and $M(0)$ all lie within the interval $[1/k_0, k_0]$. For each integer $k > k_0$, define the stopping time

$$\tau_k = \inf\Big\{t \in [0,\tau_e) : \min\{X,\ Y\ , X_m\ , T\ , Z\ , M\ \} \leq \frac{1}{k} \text{ or } \max\{X\ , Y\ , X_m\ , T\ , Z\ , M\ \} \geq k\Big\},$$

where throughout this section, we set $\inf \emptyset = \infty$(as usual $\emptyset$ denotes the empty set). According to the definition, τ_k is increasing as $k \to \infty$. Set $\tau_\infty = \lim_{k\to\infty} \tau_k$, whence $\tau_\infty \leq \tau_e$ a.s. If we can show that $\tau_\infty = \infty$ a.s., then $\tau_e = \infty$ and $\{X(t),\ Y(t)\ X_m(t),\ T(t),\ Z(t),\ M(t)\} \in \Re^6_+$ a.s. for all $t \geq 0$. In other words, to complete the proof, all we need to show that $\tau_\infty = \infty$ a.s. If this statement is false, then there exist a pair of constants $\tau > 0$ and $\epsilon_1 \in (0,1)$ such that

$$P\{\tau_\infty \leq \tau\} > \epsilon_1. \quad (18)$$

Hence there is an integer $k_1 \geq k_0$ such that

$$P\{\tau_k \leq \tau\} \geq \epsilon_1 \qquad \forall\ k \geq k_1. \quad (19)$$

For $t \leq \tau_k$, we can see, for each k,
$dN(t) = [Q - \delta(Y + \sigma_2 H) - \delta_1 N(t)]dt \leq [Q - \delta_1 N]dt$
and also

$$dM = [\mu(Y+T) - \mu_0 M]dt \leq \left[\frac{\mu Q}{\delta_1} - \mu_0 M\right]dt$$

and since

$$\frac{dM}{dt} \leq \frac{\mu Q}{\delta_1} - \mu_0 M$$

and so,

$$N(0) = X(0) + Y(0) + X_m(0) + T(0) + Z(0)$$

$$N(t) \leq \begin{cases} Q/\delta_1, & if\ N(0) \leq Q/\delta_1, \\ N(0), & if\ N(0) \geq Q/\delta_1 \end{cases} := P$$

$$M(t) \leq \begin{cases} \frac{\mu Q}{\delta_1 \mu_0}, & if\ M(0) \leq \frac{\mu Q}{\delta_1 \mu_0}, \\ M(0), & if\ M(0) \geq \frac{\mu Q}{\delta_1 \mu_0} \end{cases}$$

Define a C^2-function $V : \Re^6_+ \longrightarrow \Re^-_+$ by

$$\begin{aligned} dV &= (X - 1 - log\ X) + (Y - 1 - log\ Y) \\ &\quad +(X_m - 1 - log\ X_m) + (T - 1 - log\ T) \\ &\quad +(Z - 1 - log\ Z) + (m - 1 - log\ M) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dV &= \left(1 - \frac{1}{X}\right)dx + \frac{1}{2X^2}(dx)^2 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{Y}\right) \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2Y^2}(dy)^2 + \left(1 - \frac{1}{X_m}\right)dx_m \\ &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{T}\right)dh + \left(1 - \frac{1}{Z}\right)dz \\ &\quad + \left(1 - \frac{1}{M}\right)dm \\ &= LVdt + \epsilon(Y - X)dW(t), \end{aligned} \quad (20)$$

where $LV : \Re^6_+ \to \Re_+$ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned}
LV &= \left(1-\frac{1}{X}\right)f_1(t)+\frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2(Y+T)^2\\
&+\left(1-\frac{1}{Y}\right)f_2(t)+\frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2X^2\\
&+\left(1-\frac{1}{X_m}\right)f_3(t)+\left(1-\frac{1}{T}\right)f_4(t)\\
&+\left(1-\frac{1}{Z}\right)f_5(t)+\left(1-\frac{1}{M}\right)f_6(t)\\
&= Q-\beta_1XY-\beta_2XT-\pi XM+\pi_0X_m+\gamma_0Z\\
&-\delta_1X-\frac{Q}{X}+\beta_1Y+\beta_2T+\pi M-\frac{\pi_0X_m}{X}-\frac{\gamma_0Z}{X}\\
&+\delta_1+\frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2(Y+T)^2+\beta_1XY+\beta_2XT\\
&-(\delta+\phi+\gamma+\delta_1)Y-\beta_1X\\
&-\frac{\beta_2T}{Y}-(\delta+\phi+\gamma+\delta_1)\\
&+\frac{1}{2}\epsilon^2X^2+\pi XM-\pi_0X_m-\delta_1X_m\\
&-\frac{\pi XM}{X_m}+\pi_0+\delta_1+\phi Y-\sigma_1\gamma T-\sigma_2\delta T\\
&-\delta_1T-\frac{\phi Y}{T}-\sigma_1\gamma+\sigma_2\delta+\delta_1+\gamma Y\\
&-\sigma_1\gamma T-\gamma_0Z-\delta_1Z-\frac{\gamma Y}{Z}-\frac{\sigma_1\gamma T}{Z}+\gamma_0+\delta_1\\
&+\mu(Y+T)-\mu_0M-\frac{\mu(Y+T)}{M}+\mu_0\\
&\le Q+5\delta_1+(\beta_1+\beta_2+\pi+2\mu+\delta)P+\delta\\
&+\gamma+\phi+\mu_0+\frac{5}{2}\epsilon^2P^2\\
&:= \tilde{D} \qquad (21)
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
&E\left[W\{X(\tau_k\wedge\tau),Y(\tau_k\wedge\tau),X_m(\tau_k\wedge\tau),T(\tau_k\wedge\tau),\right.\\
&\left.Z(\tau_k\wedge\tau),M(\tau_k\wedge\tau)\}\right]\\
&\le W\{X(0),Y(0),X_m(0),T(0),Z(0),M(0)\}\\
&+E\left[\int_0^{(\tau_k\wedge\tau)}dt\tilde{D}\right]\\
&\le W\{X(0),Y(0),X_m(0),T(0),Z(0),M(0)\} \qquad (22)\\
&+\tilde{D}\tau
\end{aligned}$$

Set $\Omega_k = (\tau_k \wedge \tau)$ Note that for every $\omega \in \Omega_k$, there is at least one of $X(\tau_k,\omega)$, $Y(\tau_k,\omega)$, $X_m(\tau_k,\omega)$, $T(\tau_k,\omega)$, $Z(\tau_k,\omega)$ and $M(\tau_k,\omega)$ that equals k or $1/k$ and hence $W\{X(\tau_k),\ Y(\tau_k),\ X_m(\tau_k),\ T(\tau_k),\ Z(\tau_k),\ M(\tau_k)\}$ is no less than $k-1-\log k$ or $1/k-1-\log k$ consequently.

$$\begin{aligned}
&W\{X(\tau_k),\ Y(\tau_k),\ X_m(\tau_k),\ T(\tau_k),\ Z(\tau_k),\ M(\tau_k)\}\\
&\qquad\ge k-1-\log k\wedge 1/k-1-\log k
\end{aligned}$$

It is then follows (19) and (22) that

$$\begin{aligned}
&W\{X(0),Y(0),X_m(0),T(0),Z(0),M(0)\}+\tilde{D}\tau\\
\ge &E\left[1_{\Omega_k}(\omega)W\{X(\tau_k),\ Y(\tau_k),\ X_m(\tau_k),\ T(\tau_k),\right.\\
&\left.Z(\tau_k),\ M(\tau_k)\}\right]\\
\ge &\epsilon\left[k-1-\log k\wedge 1/k-1-\log k\right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&W\{X(0),Y(0),X_m(0),T(0),Z(0),M(0)\}+\tilde{D}\tau\\
\ge &E\left[1_{\Omega_k}(\omega)W\{X(\tau_k),\ Y(\tau_k),\ X_m(\tau_k),\ T(\tau_k),\right.\\
&\left.Z(\tau_k),\ M(\tau_k)\}\right]\\
\ge &\epsilon\left[k-1-\log k\wedge 1/k-1-\log k\right]
\end{aligned}$$

where $1_{\Omega_k}(\omega)$ is the indicator function of Ω_k. Let $k \to \infty$ leads to the contradiction $\infty > W\{X(0),Y(0),X_m(0),T(0),Z(0),M(0)\} + \tilde{D}\tau = \infty$. So we must therefore have τ_∞ and hence the proof. □

Remark 1. *From theorem 3 for any initial value* $(X(0),\ Y(0)\ X_m(0),\ T(0),\ Z(0),\ M(0)) \in \Re^6$, *there is a unique global solution* $X(t),\ Y(t)\ X_m(t),\ T(t),\ Z(t),\ M(t) \in \Re^6$ *almost surely of system (15). Hence* $dN(t) \le [Q-\delta_1N(t)]dt$, *and* $N(t) \le \frac{Q}{\delta_1} + e^{-\delta_1 t}(N(0))$ *If* $N(0) \le \frac{Q}{\delta_1}$, *then* $N(t) \le \frac{Q}{\delta_1}$ *a.s. so the region*

$$\begin{aligned}
\Omega^* = &\{(X,Y,X_m,H,Z,M): X>0,\ Y>0\ X_m>0\\
&T>0,\ Z>0\ M>0, N(t)\le\frac{Q}{\delta_1}a.s.\}
\end{aligned}$$

is a positively invariant set of system (15) on Ω^*, *which is similar to* Ω *of system (1). From now on, we always assume that* $(X(0),\ Y(0)\ X_m(0),\ T(0),\ Z(0),\ M(0)) \in \Omega^*$.

3.2. Stochastic optimal control problem

In this section stochastic version of the optimal control problem (1) is formulated and discussed. For stochastic control theory refer [19] of Oksendal. Here the objective is to find an optimal media awareness programs $u^*(t)$ which minimizes the objective functional with an initial state x_0 is defined by

$$E_{0,x_0}\left[\int_0^{T_f}\left\{AY+BT-CX_m+\frac{C_1}{2}u^2\right\}ds\right] \qquad (23)$$

Here the expectation is obtained on the initial condition of the state (at time $t=0$) system is x_0. For the deterministic problem of earlier, it is assumed that there is a fixed constant $u(t) \le 1$ with $u(t) \le \overline{u}$ (a.s.). The class of admissible control laws is

$$\mathcal{A} = \{u(.) : u \quad is \quad adapted, \quad and \quad 0 \le u \le \overline{u} \quad a.s.\}. \tag{24}$$

To solve this stochastic control problem, the performance criterion is defined as follows:

$$J(t,x;u) = E_{t,x}\left[\int_t^{T_f}\left\{AY + BT - CX_m + \tfrac{C_1}{2}u^2\right\}ds\right], \tag{25}$$

where the expectation is conditional on the state of the system being a fixed value x at time t. The value function is define as

$$U(t,x) = \inf_{u(.)\in\mathcal{A}} J(t,x;u) = J(t,x;u^*). \tag{26}$$

It is determined a control law that minimizes the expected value $J : \mathcal{A} \to \Re_+$ given by (26). Now the stochastic analogue of the optimal control problem is formulated, subsequent to which the solution formulae is presented.

Problem: Given the system (16) and given $\mathcal{A}$ as in (24) with J as in (25), find the value function

$$U(t,x) = \inf_{u\in\mathcal{A}} J(t,x;u), \tag{27}$$

and an optimal control function

$$u^*(t) = arg \inf_{u\in\mathcal{A}} J(x;u(t)) \in \mathcal{A}. \tag{28}$$

An expression for the optimal media awareness program $u^*(t)$ is computed through the following theorem.

Theorem 4. *A solution to the optimal media awareness program problem stated in problem (24) is of the form*

$$u^*(t) = min\left[max\left(0, \left[\frac{-U_M(t)(Y+T)}{C_1}\right]\right), \overline{u}\right]. \tag{29}$$

Proof. To determine $u^*(t)$ through the dynamic programming approach it is necessary to calculate $LU(t)$ i.e. by using (17):

$$\begin{aligned} LU(t) = {} & f_1(t)U_X(t) + f_2(t)U_Y(t) + f_3(t)UX_m(t) \\ & + f_4(t)U_T(t) + f_5(t)U_Z(t) + f_6(t)U_M(t) \\ & + \frac{1}{2}(\epsilon X(Y+T))^2 U_{XX}(t) \\ & + \frac{1}{2}(\epsilon X(Y+T))^2 U_{YY}(t) \\ & - \frac{1}{2}(\epsilon X(Y+T))^2 U_{XY}(t). \end{aligned} \tag{30}$$

Applying the Hamilton-Jacobi-Bellman theory (see, for instance, [19])

$$\inf_{u\in\mathcal{A}}\left[AY + BT - CX_m + \frac{C_1}{2}u^2 + LU(t)\right]. \tag{31}$$

To compute the equation (31) it requires to derive partial derivative of the below given expression with respect to u, and equating to zero.

$$AY + BT - CX_m + \frac{C_1}{2}u^2 + LU(t). \tag{32}$$

This leads to the equation:

$$\begin{aligned} & C_1u(t) + U_M(t)(Y+T) = 0 \\ u^*(t) \quad = \quad & \min\left[\max\left(0, \frac{-U_M(t)(Y+T)}{C_1}\right), \overline{u}\right] \end{aligned} \tag{33}$$

□

In the following section numerical analysis of the results are discussed.

4. Numerical Simulations

The feasibility of analysis regarding deterministic optimality and stochastic optimality conditions are simulated numerically over $t = 30$ units of time. All parameter values in the computations are the same in both scenarios. The common parameter values used in the computations are $Q = 2,\ \beta_1 = 0.000007,\ \beta_2 = 0.000000006,\ \pi = 0.0000025,\ \gamma = 0.15,\ \gamma_0 = 0.0002,\ \phi = 0.005,\ \delta = 0.0001,\ \delta_1 = 0.00005,\ \mu_0 = 0.5,\ \sigma_1 = 2,\ \sigma_2 = 0.5,\ \pi_0 = 0.02,\ A_1 = 200,\ B = 250,\ C = 1,\ C_1 = 230,\ \epsilon = 0.0002$, while the initial conditions are $X = 1,00,000,\ Y = 200,\ X_m = 0,\ T = 0,\ Z = 0,\ M = 0$.

An iterative scheme of fourth order Runge-Kutta method is used for solving the deterministic optimality system. This method of numerically integrated ordinary differential equations by using trial step at midpoint of an interval to eliminate lower order errors terms. The algorithm is the forward-backward scheme; starting with an initial guess for the optimal controls, the state variables are then solved forward in time from the dynamics of system (1) using a Runge-Kutta method of the fourth order. Then, those state variables and initial guess for the controls are used to solve the adjoint equation (12) backward in time with given final conditions (13), again employing a fourth order Runge-Kutta method. The controls are updated and used to solve the state and then the adjoint system. This iterative process terminates when current state, adjoint, and control values converge sufficiently (See, [4,5]).

Numerical simulation to the system comprising state system (15) compelled with the proxy adjoint system (12) with transverslity conditions and characterization of the control variable $u^*(t)$ in equation (29) are carried out using forward backward algorithm. The state system (15), i.e., stochastic differential equations were first simulated using forth order Range-Kutta method by introducing noise through Euler Maruyama method [20] and then adjoint system (12) are simulated backward in time with final conditions(See, Witbooi et al. [14]). In particular, we use as a proxy for $\lambda_6(Y+T)$ in the calculation of $u(t)$ in this case. We note that the presence of $Y(t)$ makes $u(t)$ into a stochastic variable even with the said proxy (in the stochastic case).

Figure 1 shows the time series plot to illustrates the variation of the number of individuals in each compartment of the population and number of awareness campaigns with respect to time (in weeks) and Figure 1(a) shows time series plot for the deterministic epidemic model under the time dependent control $u(t)$ where as Figure 1(b) representing the control profile of the same model. Further it is evident from the Figure 1(b) that it is optimal to run awareness campaigns up to 29 units of time at maximum rate and lower down afterwords.

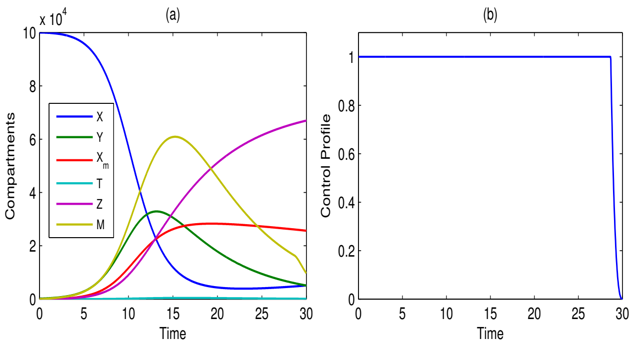


Figure 1. Simulation of deterministic model solution (a) and control profile $u(t)(b)$.

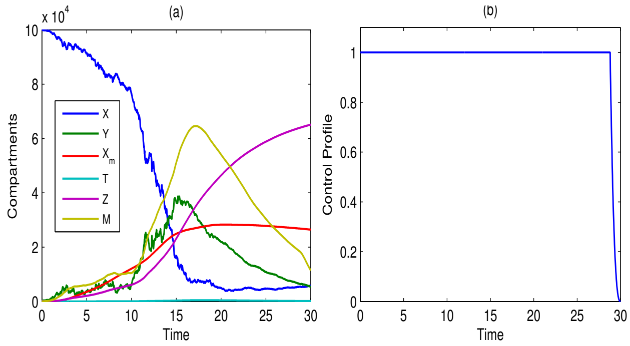


Figure 2. Simulation of Stochastic model solution (a) and control profile $u(t)(b)$.

Figure 2 illustrates the stochastic model solutions using the same parameter values and initial conditions as that of deterministic model parameters used in the illustration of Figure 1 and the corresponding control profile $u(t)$ for stochastic model. It is observed that stochastic model solution also depicts same scenario as that of deterministic model solution under the time dependent control $u(t)$ and also control profile $u(t)$ exhibits same state of affairs as that of deterministic control profile. An important point to note about our approximation is that it fully accommodates the stochasticity (embodied and concentrated in the factor Y of the expression $u^*(t)$).

To investigate how optimal control depends upon different parameters of the deterministic and stochastic model, control profile is plotted for different values of transmission rate β_1 and recovery rate γ in Figures 3 and 4 respectively. It is observed from Figure 3(a) that for higher value of transmission rate β_1, to achieve the optimal scenario awareness campaign must be implemented with maximum rate up to to 28 units of time.

However for lower value of β_1 *i.e.*, $\beta_1 = 0.000001$, and $\beta_1 = 0.0000001$, the optimal scenario can be obtained by implementing awareness campaigns with maximum rate only for initial 21 and 14 units of time, respectively. The stochastic control profile Figure 3(b) also depicts similar state of affairs, but the optimal scenario can be obtained by implementing awareness campaigns with maximum rate only for initial 7 and 8 units of time, for $\beta_1 = 0.000001$, and $\beta_1 = 0.0000001$ respectively, then onwards implementation of awareness campaigns will be guided by stochastic control profile.

These course of remedies are observed for the reason that when the transmission of disease is slow, less people get affected and hence less awareness campaigns are needed to control the disease.

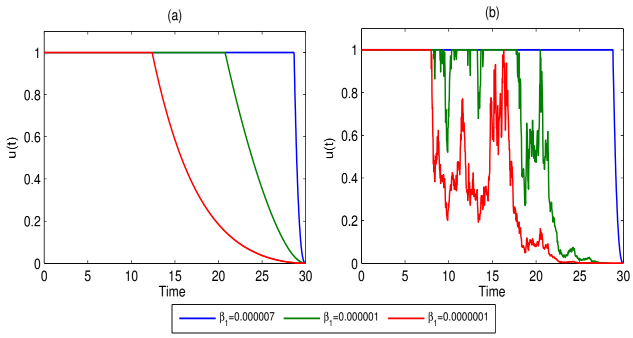


Figure 3. Simulation of Deterministic (a) and Stochastic (b) control profile for different values of β_1.

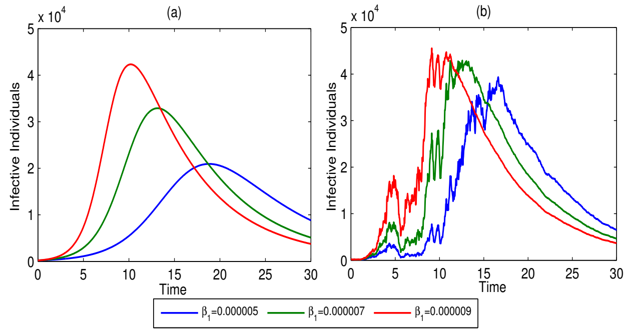


Figure 5. Simulation of Deterministic (a) and Stochastic (b) Infectives for different values of β_1.

Similarly optimal scenario will change from implementing awareness campaigns with maximum rate up to 28 units of time to 16 and 6 units of time for the change in recovery rate $\gamma = 0.15$ to $\gamma = 0.8$ and $\gamma = 1$ respectively (Figure 4(a)). Again stochastic control profile Figure 4(b) also depicts similar state of affairs, but the optimal scenario can be obtained by implementing awareness campaigns with maximum rate only for initial 6 and 7 units of time, for $\gamma = 0.8$ and $\gamma = 1$ respectively, then onwards implementation of awareness campaigns will be guided by stochastic control profile.

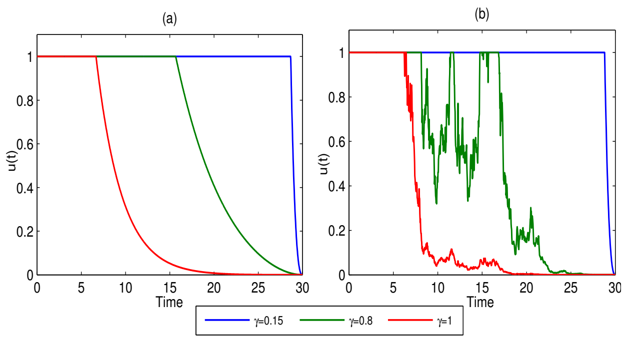


Figure 4. Simulation of Deterministic (a) and Stochastic (b) control profile for different values of recovery rate γ.

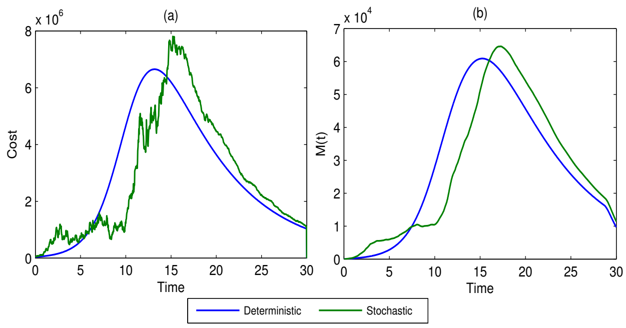


Figure 6. Simulation of Deterministic and Stochastic Cost (a) and Media campaigns (b).

Figure 5 shows the effect of transmission rate β_1 on infected population for the deterministic and stochastic models. Increase in the transmission rate β_1 leads increase in number of infections, and hence it requires to continue the implementation of awareness campaigns at maximum rate.

Figure 6(a) shows the simulation of deterministic and stochastic cost function and cumulative density of awareness programs 6(b). From the Figures 6(a) and 6(b) it is clear that cost and awareness programs are proportional to each other, which implies that, as number of media awareness programs increases cost of control for epidemic is also increasing.

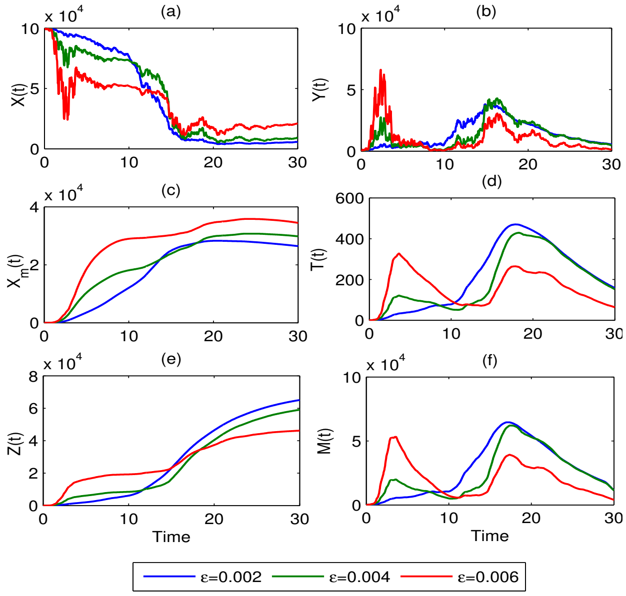


Figure 7. Simulation of solution of each states for different values of perturbation parameter ϵ.

Figure 7 shows the difference in the number of individuals in each state of a system (15) for different values of perturbation parameter ϵ. From Figure 7(a) it is observed that the number of unaware susceptible are decreasing as ϵ increases initially up to 12 units of time and then increasing till final time. In case of infectives as perturbation increases number of infections are increasing up to 8 units of time later it is decreasing till final time see Figure 7(b) and from Figure 7(c) it is clear that as perturbation increases, aware susceptible are increasing till final time. Figure 7(d),7(e),7(f) are varying in the same direction as that of infectives, as ϵ increases.

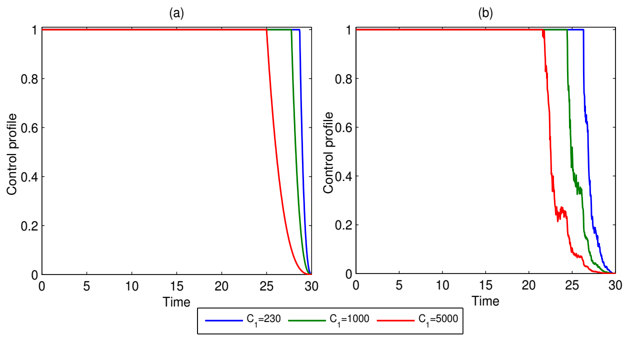


Figure 8. Simulation of control profile for different values of C_1.

To investigate how the optimal control varies depends upon the positive weight C_1, it is plotted the control profile for different values of C_1. It is observed from the Figure 8(a) that as the positive weight C_1 increased up to 5000 the optimal scenario is achieved in 25 units of time and when $C_1 = 230$ it is sufficient to implement control on awareness programs at maximum rate up to 29 units of time. For stochastic optimal control it is observed from Figure 8(b) that when $C_1 = 5000$ it is enough to implement optimality at maximum rate up to 22 units of time and for lower value of $C_1 = 230$ it is necessary to continues the implementation of awareness programs up to 27 units of time at maximum rate. This indicates that as the weight of control (awareness programs) increases, the disease can be controlled in a minimum time.

5. Conclusion

Media campaigns and epidemics are closely related to each other. The bases of this association is human behavioral responses. The present study considered the optimal control analysis of both deterministic differential equation modeling and stochastic differential equation modeling of infectious disease by taking effects of media awareness programs and treatment of infectives on the epidemic into account. Optimal media awareness strategy under the quadratic cost functional using Pontrygin's Maximum Principle and Hamiltonian-Jacobi-Bellman equation are derived for both deterministic and stochastic optimal control problem respectively. The Hamiltonian-Jacobi-Bellman equation is used to solve stochastic system, which is fully non-linear equation, however it ought to be pointed out that for stochastic optimality system, it may be difficult to obtain the numerical results. For the analysis of the stochastic optimality system, the results of deterministic control problem are used to find an approximate numerical solution for the stochastic control problem. Outputs of the simulations shows that media awareness programs place important role in the minimization of infectious population with minimum cost. The model analysis further shows that awareness programs through the media campaigning are helpful in decreasing the spread of infectious diseases by isolating a fraction of susceptible from infectives. Numerical simulation of stochastic optimal control problem enables to measure the feasibility of option followed. A formal approach to the numerical simulation of the stochastic optimal control problem is far more complex and labour intensive and our method is a workable approximate alternative.

References

[1] Misra, A.K., Sharma, A. & Shukla, J.B. (2015). Stability analysis and optimal control of an epidemic model with awareness program by media. *J Bio Sys.*, 138, 53-62.

[2] Liu, W. & Zheng, O. (2015). A stochastic SIS epidemic model incorporating media coverage in a two patch setting. *Applied Mathematics and Computation*, 262, 160-168.

[3] Durrett, R. & Levin, S.A. (1994). Stochastic spatial models:The users guide to ecological application. *Philosophical Transactions: Biological Sciences*, 343, 329 - 350.

[4] Tchunche,J.M., Khamis, S.A., Agusto, F.B. & Mpeshe, S.C. (2010). Optimal control and sensitivity analysis of an influenza model with treatment and vaccination. *Acta Biotheoretica*, 59, 1-28.

[5] Okosun, K.O., Makide, O. D. & Takaidza, I. (2013). The impact of optimal control on the treatment of HIV/AIDS and screening of unaware infective. *Applied Mathematical Modeling*, 37, 3802 - 3820.

[6] Ishikawa, M. (2012). Optimal strategies for vaccination using the stochastic SIRV model. *Transactions of the Institute of the Systems, Control and Information Engineers*, 25, 343 - 348.

[7] Pontryagin, L.S., Boltyanskii, V.G., Gamkrelidze, R.V. & Mishchenko, E.F. (1962). *The mathematical theory of optimal processes*, Wiley, New York.

[8] Fleming, W.H. & Rishel, R.W. (1975). *Deterministic and stochastic optimal control*, Springer Verlag, New York.

[9] Zhao, Y., Jiang, D. & O'Regan, D. (2013). The extinction and persistance of the stochastic SIS epidemic model with vaccination, *Physica A*, 392, 4916-4927.

[10] Carletti, M. (2002). On stability properties of stochastic model for phase-bacteria interaction in open marine environment, *Math. Biosci.,* 175, 117-131.

[11] Sulem, A., & Tapiero, C.S. (1994). Computational aspects in applied stochastic control, *Computational Economics,* 7, 109146.

[12] Tornatore, E., Buccellato, S.M., & Vetro, P. (2006). On a stochastic disease model with vaccination, *Rendiconti del Circolo Matematicodi Palermo. Serie II*, 55, 223240.

[13] Tornatore, E., Vetro, P. & Buccellato, S. M. (2014). SIVR epidemic model with stochastic perturbation, *Neural Computing and Applications*, 24, 309315.

[14] Witbooi, P.J., Muller, G.E. & Van Schallkwyk, G.J. (2015). Vaccination Control in a Stochastic SVIR Epidemic Model, *Computational and Mathematical Methods in Medicine*, Article ID 271654, 9 pages.

[15] Lukes, D.L. (1982). *Differential equations: classical to control*, Academic press.

[16] Dalal, N., Greenhalgh, D. & Mao, X. (2007). A stochastic Model of AIDS and Condom use, J. Math. Anal. Appl. 325, 36-53.

[17] Gray,A., Greenhalgh, D., Hu, L., Mao, X. & Pan, J. (2011). A stochastic differential equation SIS epidemic model, *SIAM J.Appl. Math.*, 71, 876-902.

[18] Mao, X. (1997). Stochastic differential equations and applications. Horwood.

[19] Oksendal,B. (1998). *Stochastic differential equations: an introduction with applications*, Universitext, Springer, Berlin, Germany, 5th edition.

[20] Higham, D. (2001). An algorithmic introduction to numerical simulation of stochastic differential equations, *SIAM Rev.*, 43, 525546.

Shrishail Ramappa Gani *is an Assistant Professor at the Karnatak Universitys Karnatak Arts college Dharwad, India. He received his Ph.D in Statistics from the Karnatak University Dharwad, India. After his doctoral degree he joined the Karnatak Universitys Karnatak Arts College Dharwad, India as Assistant Professor in 2008. Currently he is actively involved in many research problems, and specializes in the areas of Mathematical Modelling of epidemiological/ecological systems, Stochastic modeling, optimal control theory and Operation Research.*

Shreedevi Veerabhadrappa Halawar *received the M.Sc. (Master of Science) in statistics from Karnatak University Dharwad, India. Recently she is awarded her Ph.D. (Doctor of Philospy) in Statistics, from the Karnatak University Dharwad, India. Currently she is working as a lecturer in Karnatak Arts college Dharwad, India. Her current research interests are: Mathematical modeling, Stochastic epidemic modelling; nonlinear dynamics; and control theory.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.36-40 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00625

RESEARCH ARTICLE

An integral formulation for the global error of Lie Trotter splitting scheme

Muaz Seydaoğlu

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Art and Science, Muş Alparslan University, Muş, Turkey
m.seydaoglu@alparslan.edu.tr

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 20 June 2018
Accepted 07 November 2018
Available 30 January 2019

Keywords:
Error formula
Splitting methods
Ordinary differential equations
Numerical approximation

AMS Classification 2010:
65L05, 65D30

ABSTRACT

An ordinary differential equation (ODE) can be split into simpler sub equations and each of the sub equations is solved subsequently by a numerical method. Such a procedure involves splitting error and numerical error caused by the time stepping methods applied to sub equations. The aim of the paper is to present an integral formula for the global error expansion of a splitting procedure combined with any numerical ODE solver.

1. Introduction

Consider an autonomous ODE system in a real Banach space

$$\frac{du}{dt} = (A+B)u, \qquad u(0) = u_0, \tag{1}$$

where A and B are Lie operators allowing us to write the formal solution as

$$\begin{aligned} u(t) = \varphi_t^{A+B} u_0 &= e^{t(A+B)} u_0 \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{t^k}{k!}(A+B)^k u_0, \end{aligned} \tag{2}$$

The solutions of sub equations

$$\frac{du}{dt} = Au \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{du}{dt} = Bu, \tag{3}$$

can be merged within a small time step h by

$$u_{n+1} = e^{hb_1 B} e^{ha_1 A} e^{hb_2 B} \dots e^{ha_m A} e^{hb_{m+1} B} u_n,$$

or equivalently,

$$u_{n+1} = (\varphi^B_{hb_{m+1}} \circ \varphi^A_{ha_m} \circ \dots \varphi^B_{hb_2} \circ \varphi^A_{ha_1} \circ \varphi^B_{hb_1}) u_n,$$

where u_n and u_{n+1} are approximations at $t = t_n$ and $t = t_{n+1}$ with $h = t_{n+1} - t_n$. The reverse orders of A and B as well as a_i and b_i should be noticed. This happens when one applies Lie transforms to their corresponding maps. This phenomena is termed as *Vertauschungssatz* in the literature [1]. One of the sub problems in (3) (or both) can be solved numerically. When a splitting procedure and a numerical solver are of p^{th} and r^{th} order respectively, we are interested in the integral form of the leading term of the global error.

Although it is very classical subject of numerical analysis, the global error analysis of the numerical solvers for ODEs has been discussed by Viswanath [2] and Iserles [3] in different aspects. Viswanath employed Lyapunov's exponents to express error patterns of numerical solvers for hyperbolic problems. However, Iserles presented a way of deriving an asymptotic formula for the global error in the numerical solution of highly oscillatory problems.

Error bound for splitting schemes is an active research area. The splitting of bounded operators was analyzed in [1, 4]. Jahnke and Lubich [5] found error bounds for the Strang splitting in the presence of unbounded operators, which corresponds to splitting a time dependent PDE without discretization of space operators. Hansen and Ostermann [6] also presented error analysis of splitting schemes for unbounded operators in the content of semigroup theory. Apart from the above mentioned approaches, Csomos and Farago [7] discussed the interaction of the error caused by numerical methods employed for sub problems and splitting schemes. Our main task is to give clear integral representation of this interaction. In this work, we propose to approximate the global error in terms of the local errors and the discrete flow by a Riemann integral.

2. Preliminaries

We would like to explain some of notations which will be used in the later sections. Consider the initial value problem

$$\mathbf{y}' = f(t, \mathbf{y}), \qquad \mathbf{y}(t_0) = \mathbf{y}_0, \tag{4}$$

where $\mathbf{y}_0 \in \mathbb{R}^m$ and $f : \mathbb{R}^+ \times \mathbb{R}^m \to \mathbb{R}^m$ is continuous. When a small perturbation is introduced to the initial value $\mathbf{y}_0$, for the perturbed solution $\tilde{\mathbf{y}}(t)$, the error $\mathbf{e}(t) = \mathbf{y}(t) - \tilde{\mathbf{y}}(t)$, evolves with [3,8]

$$e(t) = \Psi(t)\Psi^{-1}(c)e(c) + \mathcal{O}(e(c)^2), t > c > 0, \tag{5}$$

where $\Psi(t)$ satisfies the variational equation

$$\Psi'(t) = J(t)\Psi(t), \qquad \Psi(0) = I, \tag{6}$$

where $J(t) = \dfrac{\partial f}{\partial \mathbf{y}}$. In order to use exponentials in defining flows we firstly express (4) an autonomous system as

$$\frac{dt_1}{dt} = 1, \tag{7}$$

$$\frac{d\mathbf{y}}{dt} = f(t_1, \mathbf{y}), \tag{8}$$

and then define a Lie operator as follows

$$L = \frac{\partial}{\partial t_1} + f(t_1, \mathbf{y})\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{y}}, \tag{9}$$

which enables us to express (4) as

$$\frac{du}{dt} = Lu, \qquad u(0) = u_0, \tag{10}$$

where $u = (t_1, y)^T$ and the formal solution is $u(t) = \varphi_t^L(u_0) = e^{tL}u_0$.

3. Motivation

The local error ($\mathfrak{le}$) of a numerical method $u_{n+1} = R_{\Delta t}(u_n)$ with step size Δt for the initial value problem

$$\frac{du}{dt} = Lu, \qquad u(t_i) = u_i, \tag{11}$$

is given by

$$\Delta t^{r+1}\mathfrak{le}(u_n) = R_{\Delta t}(u_n) - \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u_n) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+2}). \tag{12}$$

The global error is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} &= u_{n+1} - u(t_{n+1}), \\ &= R_{\Delta t}(u_n) - \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u(t_n)). \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} =& \Delta t^{r+1}\mathfrak{le}(u_n) + \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u_n) - \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u(t_n)) \\ &+ \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+2}). \end{aligned} \tag{13}$$

The difference $\varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u_n) - \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u(t_n))$ can be interpreted as the time evolution of a small perturbation to initial condition $u(t_n)$ within a time interval of which length is Δt. As a result of this interpretation and considering (5), one obtains

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u_n) - \varphi_{\Delta t}^L(u(t_n)) =& \Psi(t_{n+1})\Psi^{-1}(t_n)e_n \\ &+ \mathcal{O}(\|e_n^2\|), \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

where $\Psi(t)$ is the solution of variational equation of the corresponding initial value problem. Therefore the first order difference equation for global error is given by

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} =& e_n\Psi(t_{n+1})\Psi^{-1}(t_n) + \Delta t^{r+1}\mathfrak{le}(u(t_n)) \\ &+ \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+2}). \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

A careful reader notices that $u(t_n)$ is substituted in the term $\mathfrak{le}$ instead of u_n. It might be assumed that the difference is included in the term $\mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+2})$ as Iserles pointed out in [3].

Assuming $e_i = 0$, the solution of the linear difference equation is

$$e_n = \Delta t^{r+1}\Psi(t_n)\sum_{k=i}^{f-1}\Psi^{-1}(t_{k+1})(\mathfrak{le}(u(t_k)) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+2})). \tag{16}$$

For $t_f - t_i = h = m\Delta t$, the error can be written in the integral form

$$e(t_f) = \Delta t^r\Psi(t_f)\int_{t_i}^{t_f}\Psi^{-1}(\tau+\Delta t)\mathfrak{le}(u(\tau))d\tau + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+1}).$$

As an example, we derive the global error of Euler method for the linear problem

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\frac{1}{t+1}u(t), \qquad u(t_i) = u_i. \tag{17}$$

We will find an estimation for the actual error at $t_f = t_i + h$ with time step $\Delta t = \frac{h}{m}$. It is known that local error coefficient for Euler method (in terms of Lie Operator)

$$\mathfrak{le}(u(t)) = -1/2L^2(u(t)) = -\frac{u(t)}{(t+1)^2}. \tag{18}$$

The variational flow is determined by solving

$$\frac{d\Psi}{dt} = J(t)\Psi, \qquad \Psi(t_i) = 1, \tag{19}$$

where $J(t) = -\dfrac{1}{t+1}$. Therefore,

$$e(t_f) = \Delta t\Psi(t_f)\int_{t_i}^{t_f}\Psi(\tau+\Delta t)^{-1}\mathfrak{le}(u(t))d\tau + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2), \tag{20}$$

$$e(t_f) = \Delta t\frac{t_i+1}{t_f+1}\int_{t_i}^{t_f}\frac{\tau+1+\Delta t}{t_i+1}\left(\frac{-u(\tau)}{(\tau+1)^2}\right)d\tau + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^2), \tag{21}$$

where $u(\tau) = u_i\dfrac{t_i+1}{\tau+1}$. Finally, one obtains the formula

$$e(t_f) \approx u_i\Delta t\left(\frac{1+t_i}{1+t_f}\right)\left(-1/2\,\frac{(\Delta t+2+2\,t_i)}{(1+t_i)^2} + 1/2\,\frac{(\Delta t+2+2\,t_f)}{(1+t_f)^2}\right), \tag{22}$$

that predicts the global error at $t = t_f$ in terms of initial value u_i at $t = t_i$ and step size Δt.

4. Global error of Lie Trotter Splitting

In this section, the above mentioned procedure is modified to obtain the global error expansion of any splitting procedure combined with any ODE solver. For clarity, the derivation of the formulas are given for Lie-Trotter that is widely used in the literature. The extension to the higher splitting schemes can be done in a similar way. Another simplification is that one part is assumed to be solved exactly and the other part is solved numerically.

Consider the scheme

$$u_{n+1} = [R^A_{\Delta t}]^{(m)}(\varphi^B_h(u_n)), \tag{23}$$

indicating that the sub equation $u' = Bu$ is solved exactly in $[t_n, t_{n+1}]$ and the sub equation $u' = Au$ is solved by r^{th} order numerical method $R^A_{\Delta t}$ $(r > 1)$in $[t_n, t_{n+1}]$ with step size $\Delta t = \frac{h}{m}$ (m step in each sub interval). Such a procedure involves the following two local errors

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta t^r\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\varphi^B_h(u_n)) =& [R^A_{\Delta t}]^{(m)}(\varphi^B_h(u_n)) - \varphi^{A+B}_h(u_n) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+1}),\\ h^2\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{S}}(u_n) =& \varphi^A_h\circ\varphi^B_h(u_n) - \varphi^{A+B}_h(u_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^3),\end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

where $\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{S}}(u_n) = \frac{1}{2}[B,A]$ is the coefficient of the leading term of the local splitting error (Lie Trotter in this case). $\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\varphi^B_h(u_n))$ should be considered as the global error of $R^A_{\Delta t}$ at $t_f = t_{n+1}$ starting from $t_i = t_n$ with step size Δt. This kind of global error terms of ODE solvers can be computed by method described in the motivation section. (See 20 in case of Euler method). The term $\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\varphi^B_h(u_n))$ also warns us to compute the error of the method $R^A_{\Delta t}$ at the point $\varphi^B_h(u_n)$ not at the point u_n. This is the key issue in the derivation error formulas for the splitting schemes.

Consider the partition $0 = t_0 < t_1 < t_2 < ... < T$ of the interval $[0, T]$. The global error is defined by

$$e_{n+1} = u_{n+1} - u(t_{n+1}) = [R^A_{\Delta t}]^{(m)} \circ \varphi^B_h(u_n) - \varphi^{(A+B)}_h(u(t_n)).$$

Adding and subtracting the terms $(\varphi^A_h \circ \varphi^B_h)(u_n)$ and $\varphi^{(A+B)}_h(u_n)$ yields

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} =&[R^A_{\Delta t}]^{(m)} \circ \varphi^B_h(u_n) - (\varphi^A_h \circ \varphi^B_h)(u_n) \\ &+ (\varphi^A_h \circ \varphi^B_h)(u_n) - \varphi^{(A+B)}_h(u_n) \\ &+ \varphi^{(A+B)}_h(u_n) - \varphi^{(A+B)}_h(u(t_n)). \end{aligned}$$

Grouping the terms two by two and considering (24) and (14) one can write

$$\begin{aligned} e_{n+1} =&\Delta t^r \mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\varphi^B_h(u_n)) + h^2 \mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{S}}(u_n) \\ &+ e_n \Psi(t_{n+1})\Psi^{-1}(t_n) + \mathcal{O}(h^3) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+1}), \end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

where Ψ is the solution of variational equation that corresponds to the full equation (1).

After approximating the solution of this difference equation as a Riemann integral, the global error in the integral form is computed by

$$\begin{aligned} e(T) =&h\Psi(T) \int_0^T \Psi^{-1}(t+h)\{\frac{\Delta t^r}{h} \mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}\left(\varphi^B_h\left(u(t)\right)\right) \\ &+ \frac{1}{2}[B,A]\}dt + \mathcal{O}(h^2) + \mathcal{O}(\Delta t^{r+1}h^{-1}). \end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

5. Numerical Example

In this section, we will show the sharpness of the estimation of the global errors given by (26). As a test equation we choose

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\frac{u(t)}{t+1} - u^2(t), \qquad u(0) = 1, \tag{27}$$

with exact solution

$$u(t) = \frac{1}{(ln(t+1)+1)(t+1)},$$

The sub equations

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -\frac{u(t)}{t+1}, \qquad u(0) = u_0,$$

and

$$\frac{du}{dt} = -u^2(t), \qquad u(0) = u_0,$$

have the exact solutions $u_A(t) = \dfrac{u_0}{t+1}$ and $u_B(t) = \dfrac{u_0}{1+tu_0}$, respectively. One also needs the variational flows of the equations (27) which can be given as

$$\Psi_{full}(t) = \frac{1}{(ln(t+1)+1)^2(t+1)}. \tag{28}$$

When the part A is solved by first order Euler method with step size $\Delta t = \frac{h}{m}$ in $[t_n, t_{n+1}]$ and part B proceeds in time by its exact flow, the numerical scheme is written as

$$u_{n+1} = [R^A_{\Delta t}]^{(m)} \circ \varphi^B_h(u_n). \tag{29}$$

Firstly the term $\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}\left(\varphi^B_h(u(t))\right)$ that is, the global error of Euler time stepping at $t+h$ starting from t with initial condition $\varphi^B_h(u(t))$ is needed. Luckily, the desired error formula, but with initial condition u_i, has been already derived in (22). Just only taking $t_i = t$, $t_f = t+h$ and $u_i = \varphi^B_h(u(t)) = \dfrac{u(t)}{1+hu(t)}$, one should see

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta t \mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\varphi^B_h(u(t))) =& [R^A_{\Delta t}]^{(m)}(\varphi^B_h(u(t))) \\ &-(\varphi^A_h \circ \varphi^B_h)(u(t)), \\ =& \frac{u(t)(1+t)}{2(1+hu(t))(1+t+h)}\left(\frac{(\Delta t+2+2\tau)}{-(1+t)^2} + \frac{(\Delta t+2+2t+h)}{(1+t+h)^2}\right). \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, the leading coefficient of Lie Trotter splitting for (27) is found to be

$$\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{s}}(u(t)) = \frac{1}{2}[B,A]u(t) = -\frac{1}{2}\frac{u(t)^2}{t+1}. \tag{30}$$

Finally, computing the integral (26) yields the estimation

$$\begin{aligned} e(T) \approx& h\Psi_{full}(T) \int_0^T \Psi^{-1}_{full}(\tau+h) \\ &\left\{\frac{1}{m}\mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{R}}(\varphi^B_h(u(\tau))) + \mathfrak{le}_{\mathfrak{S}}(u(\tau))\right\} d\tau. \end{aligned} \tag{31}$$

Table I presents the sharpness of the estimation (31) for various Δt and h at final $T = 20$.

Table 1. Comparison of actual errors and estimated errors of Lie Trotter at $T = 20$.

	$h = 0.1$ Δt=0.01	$h = 0.1$ Δt=0.001	$h = 0.01$ Δt=0.001	$h = 0.01$ Δt=0.0001
Actual error	-1.909e-4	-1.445e-4	-1.899e-5	-1.438e-5
Estimated error	-1.621e-4	-1.575e-4	-1.409e-5	-1.404e-5

6. Remarks and Conclusion

Splitting methods are becoming more and more popular among practitioners of numerical methods for differential equations. These methods provide separate treatments of simpler sub equations comparing to whole problem. However, the interaction of the errors caused by splitting procedure and time stepping methods applied to sub problems should be considered because the interaction might lead to order reduction in the long time run. Such a derived formula enables us to estimate error behavior of a method so that suitable solvers are employed. We choose a simple test problem to give a clear description of the integral formula. However in most of the applied problems, exact flows of full equation and sub equations are not available. In this case, derived formulas can be used to obtain reasonable error bounds by taking appropriate norms of the given expressions. However, in case of long time integration, asymptotic solutions and asymptotics expansions of the corresponding integrals that can be computed by some perturbation methods such as WKB give the long time error behaviors of the numerical methods. Indeed, the presented formulas are derived in search of suitable splitting algorithms for the long time integration of highly oscillatory non linear equations.

References

[1] Hairer, E., Lubich, C. and Wanner, G. (2002). Geometric numerical integration: structure-preserving algorithms for ordinary differential equations. Springer.

[2] Viswanath, D. (2001). Global errors of numerical ODE solvers and Lyapunov's theory of stability. IMA Journal of Numerical Analysis, 21, 387-486.

[3] Iserles, A. (2002). On the global error of discretization methods for highly-oscillatory ordinary differential equations. BIT Numerical Mathematics, 42, 561-599.

[4] Sanz-Serna, J. M. and Calvo, P. (1994). Numerical Hamiltonian problems. Chapman & Hall.

[5] Jahnke, T. and Lubich, C. (2000). Error bounds for exponential operator splittings. BIT Numerical Mathematics, 40, 735-744.

[6] Hansen, E. and Ostermann, A. (2009). Exponential splitting for unbounded operators. Mathematics of Computation, 78, 1485-1496.

[7] Csomós, P. and Faragó, I. (2008). Error analysis of the numerical solution of split differential equations. Mathematical and Computer Modelling, 48, 1090-1106.

[8] Ascher, U.M., Mattheij, R.M.M. and Russell, R.D. (1995). Numerical solution of boundary value problems for ordinary differential equations. Society for Industrial and Applied Mathematics.

Muaz Seydaoğlu *is currently doctor of Mathematics in Muş Alparslan University. His research interests include geometric numerical methods, finite difference methods and collocation methods for numerical analysis of the differential equations and partial differential equations.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.41-48 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00585

RESEARCH ARTICLE

On refinements of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for Riemann-Liouville fractional integral operators

Hüseyin Budak

Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science and Arts, Düzce University, Düzce, Turkey
hsyn.budak@gmail.com

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 02 March 2018
Accepted 10 December 2018
Available 30 January 2019

Keywords:
Hermite-Hadamard inequality
Fractional integral operators
Convex function

AMS Classification 2010:
26D15, 26B25, 26D10

ABSTRACT

In this paper, we first establish weighted versions of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for Riemann-Liouville fractional integral operators utilizing weighted function. Then we obtain some refinements of these inequalities. The results obtained in this study would provide generalization of inequalities proved in earlier works.

1. Introduction

The Hermite-Hadamard inequality, which is the first fundamental result for convex mappings with a natural geometrical interpretation and many applications, has drawn attention much interest in elementary mathematics.

The inequalities discovered by C. Hermite and J. Hadamard for convex functions are considerable significant in the literature (see, e.g., [17, p.137], [2]). These inequalities state that if $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is a convex function on the interval I of real numbers and $a, b \in I$ with $a < b$, then

$$f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) \leq \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)dx \leq \frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}. \tag{1}$$

Both inequalities hold in the reversed direction if f is concave.

In [6], Fejér obtained the following inequality which is the weighted generalization of Hermite-Hadamard inequality (1):

Let $f : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be convex function. Then the inequality

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\int_a^b g(x) &\leq \int_a^b f(x)g(x)dx \\ &\leq \frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}\int_a^b g(x)dx \end{aligned}$$

holds, where $g : [a, b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is nonnegative, integrable and symmetric to $(a + b)/2$.

A number of mathematicians have devoted their efforts to generalise, refine, counterpart and extend these two inequalities for different classes of functions, (see, for example, [1]- [5], [8]- [11], [13], [14], [16], [19]- [26]) and the references cited therein.

The remainder of this work is organized as follows: we first give the definitions of Riemann-Liouville fractional integrals and present some Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for Riemann-Liouville fractional integral operators in Section 2. In the main section, we first establish a new weighted version of Hermite-Hadamard inequality for Riemann-Liouville fractional integrals. Moreover, we obtain some refinements of this result using the symmetric weighted function. We give also some special cases of these inequalities. In the last section, we give some conclusions and future directions of research.

2. Preliminaries

In the following we will give some necessary definitions and mathematical preliminaries of fractional calculus theory which are used further in this paper.

Definition 1. *Let $f \in L_1[a,b]$. The Riemann-Liouville integrals $J_{a+}^{\alpha}f$ and $J_{b-}^{\alpha}f$ of order $\alpha > 0$ with $a \geq 0$ are defined by*

$$J_{a+}^{\alpha}f(x) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)}\int_a^x (x-t)^{\alpha-1} f(t)dt, \quad x > a$$

and

$$J_{b-}^{\alpha}f(x) = \frac{1}{\Gamma(\alpha)}\int_x^b (t-x)^{\alpha-1} f(t)dt, \quad x < b$$

respectively. Here, $\Gamma(\alpha)$ is the Gamma function and $J_{a+}^{0}f(x) = J_{b-}^{0}f(x) = f(x)$.

It is remarkable that Sarikaya et al. [20] first give the following interesting integral inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type involving Riemann-Liouville fractional integrals.

Theorem 1. *Let $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a positive function with $0 \leq a < b$ and $f \in L_1[a,b]$. If f is a convex function on $[a,b]$, then the following inequalities for fractional integrals hold:*

$$\begin{aligned} & f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) \\ \leq\ & \frac{\Gamma(\alpha+1)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[J_{a+}^{\alpha}f(b) + J_{b-}^{\alpha}f(a)\right] \qquad (2) \\ \leq\ & \frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2} \end{aligned}$$

with $\alpha > 0$.

Hermite-Hadamard-Fejér inequality for Riemann-Liouville fractional integral operators was given by İşcan in [11], as follows:

Let $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be convex function with with $a < b$ and $f \in L[a,b]$. If $g : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is non-negative, integrable and symmetric with respect to $\frac{a+b}{2}$ i.e. $g(a+b-x) = g(x)$, then the following inequalities hold

$$\begin{aligned} & f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\left[J_{a+}^{\alpha}(g)(b) + J_{b-}^{\alpha}(g)(a)\right] \\ \leq\ & \left[J_{a+}^{\alpha}(fg)(b) + J_{b-}^{\alpha}(fg)(a)\right] \\ \leq\ & \frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}\left[J_{a+}^{\alpha}(g)(b) + J_{b-}^{\alpha}(g)(a)\right]. \end{aligned}$$

For more information for fractional calculus, please refer to ([7], [12], [15], [18]).

Now we give the following lemma:

Lemma 1. *[22,25] Let $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a convex function and h be defined by*

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{2}\left[f\left(\frac{a+b}{2} - \frac{t}{2}\right) + f\left(\frac{a+b}{2} + \frac{t}{2}\right)\right].$$

Then h is convex, increasing on $[0, b-a]$ and for all $t \in [0, b-a]$,

$$f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) \leq h(t) \leq \frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}.$$

In [22], Xiang obtained following important inequalities for the Riemann-Liouville fractional integrals utilizing the Lemma 1:

Theorem 2. *Let $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a positive function with $a < b$ and $f \in L_1[a,b]$. If f is a convex function on $[a,b]$, then WH is convex and monotonically increasing on $[0,1]$ and*

$$\begin{aligned} f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) &= WH(0) \leq WH(t) \leq WH(1) \qquad (3) \\ &= \frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[\left(J_{a+}^{\alpha}f\right)(b) + \left(J_{b-}^{\alpha}f\right)(a)\right] \end{aligned}$$

with $\alpha > 0$ where

$$\begin{aligned} WH(t) = \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f\left(tx + (1-t)\frac{a+b}{2}\right) \\ \times\left((b-x)^{\alpha-1} + (x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 3. *Let $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a positive function with $a < b$ and $f \in L_1[a,b]$. If f is a convex function on $[a,b]$, then WP is convex and monotonically increasing on $[0,1]$ and*

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^{\alpha}f\right)(b)+\left(J_{b^-}^{\alpha}f\right)(a)\right] \quad (4)\\ =\ & WP(0)\leq WP(t)\leq WP(1)=\frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}\end{aligned}$$

with $\alpha>0$ *where*

$$\begin{aligned}&WP(t)\\ =\ &\frac{\alpha}{4(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_a^b\left[f\left(\left(\frac{1+t}{2}\right)a+\left(\frac{1-t}{2}\right)x\right)\right.\\ \times\ &\left(\left(\frac{2b-a-x}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}+\left(\frac{x-a}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right)\\ +\ &f\left(\left(\frac{1+t}{2}\right)b+\left(\frac{1-t}{2}\right)x\right)\\ \times\ &\left.\left(\left(\frac{b-x}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}+\left(\frac{x+b-2a}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right)\right]dx.\end{aligned}$$

In this study, we establish some refinements of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities utilizing fractional integrals which generalize the inequalities (2), (3) and (4).

3. Refinements of Hermite Hadamard Type Inequalities

In this section, we will present refinements of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities via Riemann-Liouville fractional integral operators .

The following Lemma will be frequently used to prove our results.

Lemma 2. *[9] Let* $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ *be convex function with* $a<b$ *and* $f\in L[a,b]$. *Let* $A,B,C,D\in[a,b]$ *with* $A+B=C+D$ *and* $|C-D|\leq|A-B|$. *Then,*

$$f(C)+f(D)\leq f(A)+f(B).$$

Theorem 4. *Let* $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ *be convex function with* $a<b$ *and* $f\in L[a,b]$. *Let the weight function* $w:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ *be continuous and symmetric about the point* $\left(\frac{a+b}{2},w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)$, *i.e.* $\frac{1}{2}[w(s)+w(a+b-s)]=w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$. *Then, we have the following inequality*

$$\begin{aligned}&f\left(w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) \quad (5)\\ \leq\ &\frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[J_{a^+}^{\alpha}f(w(b))+J_{b^-}^{\alpha}f(w(a))\right]\end{aligned}$$

and if the function w *is monotonic on* $[a,b]$, *then we have*

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[J_{a^+}^{\alpha}f(w(b))+J_{b^-}^{\alpha}f(w(a))\right]\\ \leq\ &\frac{f(w(a))+f(w(b))}{2} \quad (6)\end{aligned}$$

with $\alpha>0$.

Proof. By the hypothesis of symmetricity of the function w, we have

$$2w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)=w(s)+w(a+b-s)$$

and we also have

$$\left|w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)-w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right|\leq|w(s)-w(a+b-s)|$$

for $s\in[a,b]$. Applying Lemma 2, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}&2f\left(w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) \quad (7)\\ \leq\ &f(w(s))+f(w(a+b-s)).\end{aligned}$$

Multiplying by $\frac{(s-a)^{\alpha-1}}{\Gamma(\alpha)}$ both sides of (7) and integrating with respect to s on $[a,b]$, we deduce that

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}f\left(w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ \leq\ &J_{a^+}^{\alpha}f(w(b))+J_{b^-}^{\alpha}f(w(a))\end{aligned}$$

which completes the proof of the inequality (5). By the monotonicity w, we have

$$|w(s)-w(a+b-s)|\leq|w(a)-w(b)|$$

for $s\in[a,b]$ and by symmetricity of the function w, we have

$$w(s)+w(a+b-s)=w(a)+w(b)$$

for $s\in[a,b]$. Applying Lemma 2, we get

$$\begin{aligned}&f(w(s))+f(w(a+b-s)) \quad (8)\\ \leq\ &f(w(a))+f(w(b)).\end{aligned}$$

Multiplying both sides of (8) by $\frac{(s-a)^{\alpha-1}}{\Gamma(\alpha)}$ and integrating with respect to s on $[a,b]$ and dividing both sides by $\frac{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}$, we obtain the desired inequality (6). □

Remark 1. *If we choose $w(t)=t$ in Theorem 4, then the inequalities (5) and (6) reduce to left and right hand sides of the inequality (2), respectively.*

Remark 2. *If we choose $\alpha=1$ in Theorem 4, then Theorem 4 reduces to Theorem 1 proved in [9].*

Theorem 5. *Let the weight function $w:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ be continuous and symmetric about the point $\left(\frac{a+b}{2}, w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)$, i.e. $\frac{1}{2}[w(s)+w(a+b-s)] = w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$. If $f:[a,b]\to\mathbb{R}$ is a convex function on $[a,b]$, then WH_w is convex and monotonically increasing on $[0,1]$ and we have the following inequalities*

$$\begin{aligned} & f\left(w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) \qquad (9)\\ = & WH_w(0)\le WH_w(t)\le WH_w(1)\\ = & \frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[J_{a+}^{\alpha}f(w(b))+J_{b-}^{\alpha}f(w(a))\right]\end{aligned}$$

with $\alpha>0$ where

$$\begin{aligned} & WH_w(t)\\ = & \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f\left(tw(x)+(1-t)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left((b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx.\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Firstly, for t_1, t_2, $\beta\in[0,1]$, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & WH_w((1-\beta)t_1+\beta t_2)\\ = & \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f\left(\left(w(x)-w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\right.\\ & \times[(1-\beta)t_1+\beta t_2]+w\left.\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left[(b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right]dx\\ = & \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f\left((1-\beta)\right.\\ & \times\left[\left(w(x)-w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)t_1+w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right]\\ & \left.+\beta\left(w(x)-w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)t_2+w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left[(b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right]dx.\end{aligned}$$

Since f is convex, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & WH_w((1-\beta)t_1+\beta t_2)\\ \le & \frac{\alpha(1-\beta)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\\ \times & \int_a^b f\left(\left(w(x)-w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)t_1+w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left[(b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right]dx\\ + & \frac{\alpha\beta}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\\ \times & \int_a^b f\left(\left(w(x)-w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)t_2+w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left[(b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right]dx\\ = & (1-\beta)WH_w(t_1)+\beta WH_w(t_2).\end{aligned}$$

Hence, we get WH_w is convex on $[0,1]$. On the other hand, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & WH_w(t)\\ = & \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_a^{\frac{a+b}{2}} f\left(tw(x)+(1-t)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left((b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx\\ & +\frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\int_{\frac{a+b}{2}}^b f\left(tw(x)+(1-t)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)\\ & \times\left((b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx\end{aligned}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}} \times \int_a^{\frac{a+b}{2}} f\left(tw(x)+(1-t)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) \times \left((b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx + \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}} \times \int_a^{\frac{a+b}{2}} f\left(tw(a+b-x)+(1-t)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) \times \left((b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx. \quad (10)$$

Let $t_1 < t_2, t_1, t_2, \in [0,1]$. By the symmetricity of the function w, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\left[t_1 w(x)+(1-t_1)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right] + \left[t_1 w(a+b-x)+(1-t_1)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right] \\ = &\left[t_2 w(x)+(1-t_2)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right] + \left[t_2 w(a+b-x)+(1-t_2)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} &\left|\left[t_1 w(x)+(1-t_1)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right] - \left[t_1 w(a+b-x)+(1-t_1)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right]\right| \\ = &\; t_1\left|w(x)-w(a+b-x)\right| \\ \le &\; t_2\left|w(x)-w(a+b-x)\right| \\ = &\left|\left[t_2 w(x)+(1-t_2)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right] - \left[t_2 w(a+b-x)+(1-t_2)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right]\right| \end{aligned}$$

for $x \in [a,b]$. Hence, applying Lemma 2, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &f\left(t_1 w(x)+(1-t_1)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) + f\left(t_1 w(a+b-x)+(1-t_1)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) \\ \le &\; f\left(t_2 w(x)+(1-t_2)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right) + f\left(t_2 w(a+b-x)+(1-t_2)w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right). \end{aligned} \quad (11)$$

Multiplying both sides of (11) by

$$\frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[(b-x)^{\alpha-1}+(x-a)^{\alpha-1}\right]$$

and integrating with respect to s on $\left[a, \frac{a+b}{2}\right]$, then by considering the equality (10), we deduce that $WH_w(t_1) \le WH_w(t_2)$. Thus, WH_w is monotonically increasing on $[0,1]$. Using the facts that

$$WH_w(0) = f\left(w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)$$

and

$$WH_w(1) = \frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[J_{a^+}^{\alpha} f(w(b)) + J_{b^-}^{\alpha} f(w(a))\right]$$

then we obtain the desired result. Thus, the proof is completed. □

Remark 3. *If we choose $w(t) = t$ in Theorem 5, then the inequality (9) reduces to the inequality (3).*

Remark 4. *If we choose $\alpha = 1$ in Theorem 5, then Theorem 5 reduces to Theorem 2 proved in [9].*

Theorem 6. *Let the weight function $w : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be continuous and monotonic on $[a,b]$ and let w be symmetric about the point $\left(\frac{a+b}{2}, w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right)$, i.e. $\frac{1}{2}[w(s)+w(a+b-s)] = w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)$. If $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is a convex function on $[a,b]$, then WP_w is convex and monotonically increasing on $[0,1]$ and we have the following inequalities*

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{\Gamma(1+\alpha)}{2(b-a)^{\alpha}}\left[J_{a^+}^{\alpha} f(w(b)) + J_{b^-}^{\alpha} f(w(a))\right] \\ = &\; WP_w(0) \le WP_w(t) \le WP_w(1) \\ = &\; \frac{f(w(a))+f(w(b))}{2} \end{aligned} \quad (12)$$

with $\alpha > 0$ where

$$\begin{aligned} & WP_w(t) \\ = & \frac{\alpha}{4(b-a)^\alpha}\int_a^b f\left((1-t)w\left(\frac{a+x}{2}\right)+tw(a)\right) \\ & \times\left(\left(\frac{2b-a-x}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}+\left(\frac{x-a}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx \\ & +\frac{\alpha}{4(b-a)^\alpha}\int_a^b f\left((1-t)w\left(\frac{x+b}{2}\right)+tw(b)\right) \\ & \times\left(\left(\frac{b-x}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}+\left(\frac{x+b-2a}{2}\right)^{\alpha-1}\right)dx. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. By the way similar to in Theorem, it can be easily proved by convexity of f that WP_w is convex on $[0,1]$. Using change of variable, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & WP_w(t) \qquad (13) \\ = & \frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^\alpha}\int_a^{\frac{a+b}{2}} f((1-t)w(s)+tw(a)) \\ & \times\left((b-s)^{\alpha-1}+(u-s)^{\alpha-1}\right)ds \\ & +\frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^\alpha} \\ & \times\int_a^{\frac{a+b}{2}} f((1-t)w(a+b-s)+tw(b)) \\ & \times\left((b-s)^{\alpha-1}+(s-a)^{\alpha-1}\right)ds. \end{aligned}$$

Let $t_1 < t_2, t_1, t_2, \in [0,1]$. Since w is symmetric to $\frac{a+b}{2}$,

$$w(s)+w(a+b-s)=2w\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) \qquad (14)$$

and w is monotonic, we have

$$|w(s)-w(a+b-s)| \le |w(a)-w(b)| \qquad (15)$$

for $s \in [a,b]$. By the equality (14) and the inequality (15), we have

$$\begin{aligned} & [(1-t_1)w(s)+t_1w(a)] \\ & +[(1-t_1)w(a+b-s)+t_1w(b)] \\ = & [(1-t_2)w(s)+t_2w(a)] \\ & +[(1-t_2)w(a+b-s)+t_2w(b)] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} & |[(1-t_1)w(s)+t_1w(a)] \\ & -[(1-t_1)w(a+b-s)+t_1w(b)]| \\ = & |(1-t_1)[w(s)-w(a+b-s)] \\ & +t_1[w(a)-w(b)]| \\ \le & (1-t_1)|w(s)-w(a+b-s)| \\ & +t_1|w(a)-w(b)| \\ \le & (1-t_2)|w(s)-w(a+b-s)| \\ & +t_2|w(a)-w(b)| \\ = & |[(1-t_2)w(s)+t_2w(a)] \\ & -[(1-t_2)w(a+b-s)+t_2w(b)]| \end{aligned}$$

for $s \in \left[a, \frac{a+b}{2}\right]$. Therefore, applying Lemma 2, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & f((1-t_1)w(s)+t_1w(a)) \qquad (16) \\ & +f((1-t_1)w(a+b-s)+t_1w(b)) \\ \le & f((1-t_2)w(s)+t_2w(a)) \\ & +f((1-t_2)w(a+b-s)+t_2w(b)). \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying both sides of (16) by

$$\frac{\alpha}{2(b-a)^\alpha}\left[(b-s)^{\alpha-1}+(s-a)^{\alpha-1}\right]$$

and integrating with respect to s on $\left[a, \frac{a+b}{2}\right]$, then by considering the equality (13), we deduce that $WP_w(t_1) \le WP_w(t_2)$. Hence, WP_w is monotonically increasing on $[0,1]$. This completes the proof. □

Remark 5. *If we choose $w(t)=t$ in Theorem 6, then the inequality (12) reduces to the inequality (4).*

Remark 6. *If we choose $\alpha=1$ in Theorem 6, then Theorem 6 reduces to Theorem 3 proved in [9].*

4. Conclusion

In this paper, we present some new weighted refinements of Hermite-Hadamard inequalities for Riemann-Liouville fractional integrals. For further studies we propose to consider the Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for other fractional integral operators

References

[1] Azpeitia, A.G. (1994). Convex functions and the Hadamard inequality. Rev. Colombiana Math., 28 , 7-12.

[2] Dragomir, S.S. and Pearce, C.E.M. (2000). Selected topics on Hermite-Hadamard inequalities and applications. RGMIA Monographs, Victoria University.

[3] Dragomir, S.S. (1992). Two mappings in connection to Hadamard's inequalities. J. Math. Anal. Appl., 167, 49-56.

[4] Ertuğral, F., Sarıkaya, M. Z. and Budak, H. (2018). On refinements of Hermite-Hadamard-Fejer type inequalities for fractional integral operators. Applications and Applied Mathematics, 13(1), 426-442.

[5] Farissi, A.E. (2010). Simple proof and re nement of Hermite-Hadamard inequality. J. Math. Inequal., 4, 365-369.

[6] Fejér, L. (1906). Uberdie Fourierreihen, II, Math., Naturwise. Anz Ungar. Akad. Wiss, 24, 369-390.

[7] Gorenflo, R., Mainardi, F. (1997). Fractional calculus: integral and differential equations of fractional order, Springer Verlag, Wien, 223-276.

[8] Hwang, S.R., Yeh S.Y. and Tseng, K.L. (2014). Refinements and similar extensions of Hermite–Hadamard inequality for fractional integrals and their applications. Applied Mathematics and Computation, 24, 103-113.

[9] Hwang, S.R., Tseng, K.L., Hsu, K.C. (2013). Hermite–Hadamard type and Fejer type inequalities for general weights (I). J. Inequal. Appl. 170.

[10] Iqbal, M., Qaisar S. and Muddassar, M. (2016). A short note on integral inequality of type Hermite-Hadamard through convexity. J. Computational analaysis and applications, 21(5), 946-953.

[11] İşcan, I. (2015). Hermite-Hadamard-Fejér type inequalities for convex functions via fractional integrals. Stud. Univ. Babeş-Bolyai Math. 60(3), 355-366.

[12] Kilbas, A.A., Srivastava H.M. and Trujillo, J.J. (2006). Theory and applications of fractional differential equations. North-Holland Mathematics Studies, 204, Elsevier Sci. B.V., Amsterdam.

[13] Ahmad, B., Alsaedi, A., Kirane, M. and Torebek, B.T. (2019). Hermite-Hadamard, Hermite-Hadamard-Fejer, Dragomir-Agarwal and Pachpatte type inequalities for convex functions via new fractional integrals. Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics, 353, 120-129.

[14] Latif, M.A. (2012). On some refinements of companions of Fejér's inequality via superquadratic functions. Proyecciones J. Math., 31(4), 309-332.

[15] Miller S. and Ross, B. (1993). An introduction to the fractional calculus and fractional differential equations. John Wiley and Sons, USA.

[16] Noor, M.A., Noor K.I. and Awan, M.U. (2016). New fractional estimates of Hermite-Hadamard inequalities and applications to means, Stud. Univ. Babeş-Bolyai Math. 61(1), 3-15.

[17] Pečarić, J.E., Proschan F. and Tong, Y.L. (1992). Convex functions, partial orderings and statistical applications. Academic Press, Boston.

[18] Podlubny, I. (1999). Fractional differential equations. Academic Press, San Diego.

[19] Sarikaya, M.Z. and Yildirim, H. (2016). On Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for Riemann-Liouville fractional integrals. Miskolc Mathematical Notes, 17(2), 1049-1059.

[20] Sarikaya, M.Z., Set, E., Yaldiz H. and Basak, N. (2013). Hermite-Hadamard's inequalities for fractional integrals and related fractional inequalities. Mathematical and Computer Modelling, 57, 2403-2407.

[21] Sarikaya, M.Z. and Budak, H. (2016). Generalized Hermite-Hadamard type integral inequalities for fractional integral, Filomat, 30(5), 1315-1326 (2016).

[22] Xiang, R. (2015). Refinements of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for convex functions via fractional integrals. J. Appl. Math. and Informatics, 33, No. 1-2, 119-125.

[23] Tseng, K.L., Hwang, S.R. and Dragomir, S.S. (2012). Refinements of Fejér's inequality for convex functions. Period. Math. Hung., 65, 17-28.

[24] Yaldiz, H. and Sarikaya, M.Z. On Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for fractional integral operators, ResearchGate Article, Available online at: `https://www.researchgate.net/publication/309824275`.

[25] Yang, G.S. and Tseng, K.L. (1999). On certain integral inequalities related to Hermite-Hadamard inequalities. J. Math. Anal. Appl., 239, 180-187.

[26] Yang, G.S. and Hong, M.C. (1997). A note on Hadamard's inequality, Tamkang J. Math., 28, 33-37.

Hüseyin Budak *graduated from Kocaeli University, Kocaeli, Turkey in 2010. He received his M.Sc. from Kocaeli University in 2013 and PhD from Düzce University in 2017, Since 2018 he is working as a Assistant Professor in the Department of Mathematics at Duzce University. His research interests focus on functions of bounded variation, theory of fractional calculus and theory of inequalities.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications (http://ijocta.balikesir.edu.tr)

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.49-59 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00559

RESEARCH ARTICLE

Hermite-Hadamard's inequalities for conformable fractional integrals

Mehmet Zeki Sarıkaya[a], Abdullah Akkurt[b*], Hüseyin Budak[a], Merve Esra Yıldırım[c], Hüseyin Yıldırım[b]

[a] *Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science and Arts, Düzce University, Düzce, Turkey*
[b] *Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science and Arts, University of Kahramanmaraş Sütçü İmam, Kahramanmaraş, Turkey*
[c] *Department of Mathematics, Faculty of Science and Arts, University of Cumhuriyet, Sivas, Turkey*
sarikayamz@gmail.com, abdullahmat@gmail.com, hsyn.budak@gmail.com, mesra@cumhuriyet.edu.tr, hyildir@ksu.edu.tr

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 06 November 2017
Accepted 02 October 2018
Available 31 January 2019

Keywords:
Hölder's inequality
Fractional derivative
Confromable fractional integrals
Trapezoid inequality
Midpoint inequality

AMS Classification 2010:
26D15, 26A51, 26A33, 26A42

ABSTRACT

In this paper, we establish the Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for conformable fractional integral and we will investigate some integral inequalities connected with the left and right-hand side of the Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for conformable fractional integral. The results presented here would provide generalizations of those given in earlier works and we show that some of our results are better than the other results with respect to midpoint inequalities.

1. Introduction

The convexity property of a given function plays an important role in obtaining integral inequalities. Proving inequalities for convex functions has a long and rich history in mathamatics. In [1], Beckenbach, a leading expert on the theory of convex functions, wrote that the inequality (1) was proved by Hadamard in 1893 [2]. In 1974, Mitrinovič found Hermite and Hadamard's note in Mathesis .

Let $f : I \subset \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ be a convex function define on an interval I of real numbers, and $a, b \in I$ with $a < b$. Then, the following inequalities hold:

$$f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) \leq \frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)dx \leq \frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}. \tag{1}$$

Inequality (1) is known in the literature as Hermite-Hadamard inequality for convex mappings. Note that some of the classical inequalities for means can be derived from (1) for appropriate particular selections of the mapping f. Both inequalities hold in the reversed direction if f is concave.

Over the last decade, classical inequalities have been improved and generalized in a number of ways; there have been a large number of research papers written on this subject, [3–8]

*Corresponding Author

Definition 1. *The function $f:[a,b]\subset\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$, is said to be convex if the following inequality holds*

$$f(\lambda x+(1-\lambda)y)\leq\lambda f(x)+(1-\lambda)f(y) \quad (2)$$

for all $x,y\in[a,b]$ and $\lambda\in[0,1]$.

In [7], Dragomir and Agarwal proved the following results connected with the right part of (1).

Lemma 1. *([7]) Let $f:I^{\circ}\subseteq\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ be a differentiable mapping on I°, $a,b\in I^{\circ}$ with $a<b$. If $f'\in L[a,b]$, then the following equality holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}-\frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\\&=\frac{b-a}{2}\int_0^1(1-2t)f'(ta+(1-t)b)\,dt.\end{aligned} \quad (3)$$

Theorem 1. *([7]) Let $f:I^{\circ}\subseteq\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ be a differentiable mapping on I°, $a,b\in I^{\circ}$ with $a<b$. If $|f'|$ is convex on $[a,b]$, then the following inequality holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}&\left|\frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}-\frac{1}{(b-a)}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx\right|\\&\leq\frac{(b-a)}{4}\left(\frac{|f'(a)|+|f'(b)|}{2}\right).\end{aligned} \quad (4)$$

In [6], Kırmacı gave the following results.

Lemma 2. *([6]) Let $f:I^{\circ}\subset\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ be a differentiable mapping on I°, $a,b\in I^{\circ}$ (I° is the interior of I) with $a<b$. If $f'\in L[a,b]$, then the following equality holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}&\frac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx-f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\\&=(b-a)\left[\int_0^{1/2}tf'(ta+(1-t)b)\,dt\right.\\&\left.+\int_{1/2}^1(t-1)f'(ta+(1-t)b)\,dt\right].\end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

Theorem 2. *([6]) Let $f:I^{\circ}\subset\mathbb{R}\to\mathbb{R}$ be a differentiable mapping on I°, $a,b\in I^{\circ}$ (I° is the interior of I) with $a<b$. If $|f'|$ is convex on $[a,b]$, then the following inequality holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}&\left|\frac{\alpha}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)\,dx-f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right)\right|\\&\leq\frac{b-a}{8}\left(|f'(a)|+|f'(b)|\right).\end{aligned} \quad (6)$$

2. Definitions and Properties of Conformable Fractional Derivative and Integral

The following definitions and theorems with respect to conformable fractional derivative and integral were referred in [9–14].

Definition 2. ***(Conformable fractional derivative)*** *Given a function $f:[0,\infty)\to\mathbb{R}$. Then the "conformable fractional derivative" of f of order α is defined by*

$$D_\alpha(f)(t)=\lim_{\varepsilon\to0}\frac{f\left(t+\varepsilon t^{1-\alpha}\right)-f(t)}{\varepsilon} \quad (7)$$

for all $t>0$, $\alpha\in(0,1]$. If f is $\alpha-$differentiable in some $(0,a)$, $\alpha>0$, $\lim_{t\to0^+}f^{(\alpha)}(t)$ exist, then define

$$f^{(\alpha)}(0)=\lim_{t\to0^+}f^{(\alpha)}(t). \quad (8)$$

We can write $f^{(\alpha)}(t)$ for $D_\alpha(f)(t)$ to denote the conformable fractional derivatives of f of order α. In addition, if the conformable fractional derivative of f of order α exists, then we simply say f is $\alpha-$differentiable.

Theorem 3. *Let $\alpha\in(0,1]$ and f,g be $\alpha-$differentiable at a point $t>0$. Then*

i. $D_\alpha(af+bg)=aD_\alpha(f)+bD_\alpha(g)$, for all $a,b\in\mathbb{R}$,

ii. $D_\alpha(\lambda)=0$, for all constant functions $f(t)=\lambda$,

iii. $D_\alpha(fg)=fD_\alpha(g)+gD_\alpha(f)$,

iv. $D_\alpha\left(\frac{f}{g}\right)=\frac{D_\alpha(f)g-D_\alpha(g)f}{g^2}$.

If f is differentiable, then

$$D_\alpha(f)(t)=t^{1-\alpha}\frac{df}{dt}(t). \quad (9)$$

Also:
1. $D_\alpha(1)=0$
2. $D_\alpha(e^{ax})=ax^{1-\alpha}e^{ax},\ a\in\mathbb{R}$
3. $D_\alpha(\sin(ax))=ax^{1-\alpha}\cos(ax),\ a\in\mathbb{R}$
4. $D_\alpha(\cos(ax))=-ax^{1-\alpha}\sin(ax),\ a\in\mathbb{R}$
5. $D_\alpha\left(\frac{1}{\alpha}t^\alpha\right)=1$
6. $D_\alpha\left(\sin(\frac{t^\alpha}{\alpha})\right)=\cos(\frac{t^\alpha}{\alpha})$

7. $D_\alpha\left(\cos(\frac{t^\alpha}{\alpha})\right) = -\sin(\frac{t^\alpha}{\alpha})$

8. $D_\alpha\left(e^{(\frac{t^\alpha}{\alpha})}\right) = e^{(\frac{t^\alpha}{\alpha})}$.

Theorem 4 (Mean value theorem for conformable fractional differentiable functions)**.** *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a continuous on $[a,b]$ and an α-fractional differentiable mapping on (a,b) with $0 \le a < b$. Then, there exists $c \in (a,b)$, such that*

$$D_\alpha(f)(c) = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{\frac{b^\alpha}{\alpha} - \frac{a^\alpha}{\alpha}}.$$

Definition 3 (Conformable fractional integral)**.** *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $0 \le a < b$. A function $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is α-fractional integrable on $[a,b]$ if the integral*

$$\int_a^b f(x)\, d_\alpha x := \int_a^b f(x)\, x^{\alpha-1} dx \tag{10}$$

exists and is finite. All α-fractional integrable on $[a,b]$ is indicated by $L_\alpha^1([a,b])$

Remark 1.

$$I_\alpha^a(f)(t) = I_1^a\left(t^{\alpha-1}f\right) = \int_a^t \frac{f(x)}{x^{1-\alpha}} dx,$$

where the integral is the usual Riemann improper integral, and $\alpha \in (0,1]$.

Theorem 5. *Let $f : (a,b) \to \mathbb{R}$ be differentiable and $0 < \alpha \le 1$. Then, for all $t > a$ we have*

$$I_\alpha^a D_\alpha^a f(t) = f(t) - f(a). \tag{11}$$

Theorem 6. ***(Integration by parts)*** *Let $f, g : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be two functions such that fg is differentiable. Then*

$$\begin{aligned} &\textstyle\int_a^b f(x)\, D_\alpha^a(g)(x)\, d_\alpha x \\ &= fg|_a^b - \textstyle\int_a^b g(x)\, D_\alpha^a(f)(x)\, d_\alpha x. \end{aligned} \tag{12}$$

Theorem 7. *Assume that $f : [a,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $f^{(n)}(t)$ is continuous and $\alpha \in (n, n+1]$. Then, for all $t > a$ we have*

$$D_\alpha^a f(t)\, I_\alpha^a = f(t).$$

Theorem 8. *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a continuous on $[a,b]$ with $0 \le a < b$. Then,*

$$|I_\alpha^a(f)(x)| \le I_\alpha^a |f|(x).$$

For more details and properties concerning the conformable integral operators, we refer, for example, to the works [15–18].

In this paper, we establish the Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for conformable fractional integral and we will investigate some integral inequalities connected with the left and right hand side of the Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for conformable fractional integral. The results presented here would provide generalizations of those given in earlier works.

3. Hermite-Hadamard's Inequalities for Conformable Fractional Integral

We will start the following important result for α-fractional differentiable mapping;

Theorem 9. *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable mapping on (a,b) with $0 \le a < b$. Then, the following conditions are equivalent:*

i) f is a convex functions on $[a,b]$

ii) $D_\alpha f(t)$ is an increasing function on $[a,b]$

iii) for any $x_1, x_2 \in [a,b]$

$$f(x_2) \ge f(x_1) + \frac{(x_2^\alpha - x_1^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_1). \tag{13}$$

Proof. *i) $\to$ ii)* Let $x_1, x_2 \in [a,b]$ with $x_1 < x_2$ and we take $h > 0$ which is small enough such that $x_1 - h, x_2 + h \in [a,b]$. Since $x_1 - h < x_1 < x_2 < x_2 + h$, then we know that

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{f(x_1) - f(x_1 - h)}{h} \\ &\le \frac{f(x_2) - f(x_1)}{x_2 - x_1} \\ &\le \frac{f(x_2 + h) - f(x_2)}{h}. \end{aligned} \tag{14}$$

Multipling the inequality (14) with $x_1^{1-\alpha} \le x_2^{1-\alpha}$, for $x_1 < x_2$, $\alpha \in (0,1]$, we get

$$\begin{aligned} &x_1^{1-\alpha}\frac{f(x_1) - f(x_1 - h)}{h} \\ &\le x_2^{1-\alpha}\frac{f(x_2 + h) - f(x_2)}{h}. \end{aligned} \tag{15}$$

Let us put $h = \varepsilon x_1^{\alpha-1}$ (and $h = \varepsilon x_2^{\alpha-1}$) such that $h \to 0$, $\varepsilon \to 0$, then the inequality (14) can be converted to

$$\frac{f(x_1) - f(x_1 - \varepsilon x_1^{\alpha-1})}{\varepsilon} \le \frac{f(x_2 + \varepsilon x_2^{\alpha-1}) - f(x_2)}{\varepsilon}.$$

Since f is α-fractional differentiable mapping on (a,b), then let $\varepsilon \to 0^+$, we obtain

$$D_\alpha f(x_1) \le D_\alpha f(x_2) \tag{16}$$

this show that $D_\alpha f$ is increasing in $[a,b]$.

$ii) \to iii)$ Take $x_1, x_2 \in [a,b]$ with $x_1 < x_2$. Since $D_\alpha f$ is increasing in $[a,b]$, then by mean value theorem for conformable fractional differentiable we get

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_2) - f(x_1) &= \frac{(x_2^\alpha - x_1^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(c) \\ &\ge \frac{(x_2^\alpha - x_1^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_1) \end{aligned} \tag{17}$$

where $c \in (x_1, x_2)$. It is follow that

$$f(x_2) \ge f(x_1) + \frac{(x_2^\alpha - x_1^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_1).$$

$iii) \to i)$ For any $x_1, x_2 \in [a,b]$, we take $x_3 = \lambda x_1 + (1-\lambda)x_2$ and $x_3^\alpha = \lambda x_1^\alpha + (1-\lambda)x_2^\alpha$ for $\lambda \in (0,1)$. It is easy to show that $x_1^\alpha - x_3^\alpha = (1-\lambda)(x_1^\alpha - x_2^\alpha)$ and $x_2^\alpha - x_3^\alpha = -\lambda(x_1^\alpha - x_2^\alpha)$. Thus, by using (13), we obtain that

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_1) &\ge f(x_3) + \frac{(x_1^\alpha - x_3^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_3) \\ &= f(x_3) + (1-\lambda)\frac{(x_1^\alpha - x_2^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_3) \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} f(x_2) &\ge f(x_3) + \frac{(x_2^\alpha - x_3^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_3) \\ &= f(x_3) - \lambda\frac{(x_1^\alpha - x_2^\alpha)}{\alpha} D_\alpha(f)(x_3). \end{aligned}$$

Both sides of the above two expressions, multiply by λ and $(1-\lambda)$, repectively, and add side to side, then we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\lambda f(x_1) + (1-\lambda) f(x_2) \\ \ge\; & f(x_3) \\ =\; & f(\lambda x_1 + (1-\lambda)x_2) \end{aligned}$$

which is show that f is a convex function. The proof is completed. □

Theorem 10. *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$, $a \ge 0$, and $f : [a,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is a continuous function and $\varphi : [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ be continuous and convex function. Then,*

$$\begin{aligned} &\varphi\left(\frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x)\, d_\alpha x\right) \\ &\le \frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b \varphi(f(x))\, d_\alpha x. \end{aligned} \tag{18}$$

Proof. Let $\varphi : [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ be a convex function and $x_0 \in [0,\infty)$. From the definition of convexity, there exists $m \in \mathbb{R}$ such that,

$$\varphi(y) - \varphi(x_0) \ge m(y - x_0). \tag{19}$$

Since f is a continuous function

$$x_0 = \frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x)\, d_\alpha x \tag{20}$$

is well defined. The function $\varphi \circ f$ is also continuous , thus we may apply (19) with $y = f(t)$ and (20) to obtain

$$\varphi(f(t)) - \varphi(x_0) \ge m(f(t) - x_0).$$

Integrating above inequality from a to b, we get

$$\begin{aligned} &\int_a^b \varphi(f(t)) d_\alpha t - \varphi(x_0)\int_a^b d_\alpha t \\ \ge\; & m\left(\int_a^b f(t) d_\alpha t - x_0 \int_a^b d_\alpha t\right) \\ =\; & m\left(\int_a^b f(t) d_\alpha t - x_0^\alpha \int_a^b d_\alpha t\right) = 0. \end{aligned}$$

It is obvious that the inequality (18) holds. □

Hermite-Hadamard's inequalities can be represented in conformable fractional integral forms as follows:

Theorem 11. *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $f : I \subset \mathbb{R}^+ \to \mathbb{R}$ be a convex function and $f \in L_\alpha^1([a^\alpha, b^\alpha])$ with $0 \le a < b$. Then, the following inequality for conformable fractional integral holds:*

$$\begin{aligned} &f\left(\frac{a^\alpha + b^\alpha}{2}\right) \\ &\le \frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\, d_\alpha x \\ &\le \frac{f(a^\alpha) + f(b^\alpha)}{2}. \end{aligned} \tag{21}$$

Proof. Since f is a convex function on $I \subset \mathbb{R}^+$, for $x^\alpha, y^\alpha \in [a^\alpha, b^\alpha]$ with $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$, we have

$$f\left(\frac{x^\alpha+y^\alpha}{2}\right)\leq\frac{f(x^\alpha)+f(y^\alpha)}{2} \tag{22}$$

i.e, with $x^\alpha = t^\alpha a^\alpha + (1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha$, $y^\alpha = (1-t^\alpha)a^\alpha + t^\alpha b^\alpha$, for $t\in[0,1]$, $\alpha\in(0,1]$

$$\begin{aligned}&2f\left(\frac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)\\&\leq f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\\&+f\left((1-t^\alpha)a^\alpha+t^\alpha b^\alpha\right).\end{aligned} \tag{23}$$

By integrating the resulting inequality with respect to t over $[0,1]$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}&2\int_0^1 f\left(\tfrac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)d_\alpha t\\&\leq\int_0^1 f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)d_\alpha t\\&+\int_0^1 f\left((1-t^\alpha)a^\alpha+t^\alpha b^\alpha\right)d_\alpha t\\&=\tfrac{2\alpha}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x,\end{aligned} \tag{24}$$

and the first inequality is proved. For the proof of the second inequality in (22) we first note that if f is a convex function, then, for $\lambda\in[0,1]$, it yields

$$f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\leq t^\alpha f(a^\alpha)+(1-t^\alpha)f(b^\alpha)$$

and

$$f\left((1-t^\alpha)a^\alpha+t^\alpha b^\alpha\right)\leq(1-t^\alpha)f(a^\alpha)+t^\alpha f(b^\alpha).$$

By adding these inequalities we have

$$\begin{aligned}&f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)+f\left((1-t^\alpha)a^\alpha+t^\alpha b^\alpha\right)\\&\leq f(a^\alpha)+f(b^\alpha).\end{aligned} \tag{25}$$

Integrating inequality with respect to t over $[0,1]$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}&\int_0^1 f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)d_\alpha t\\&+\int_0^1 f\left((1-t^\alpha)a^\alpha+t^\alpha b^\alpha\right)d_\alpha t\\&\leq\left[f(a^\alpha)+f(b^\alpha)\right]\int_0^1 d_\alpha t\end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$\frac{1}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x\leq\frac{f(a)+f(b)}{2\alpha}.$$

The proof is completed. □

Remark 2. *If we choose $\alpha=1$ in (21), then inequality (21) become inequality (1).*

Theorem 12. *Let $\alpha\in(0,1]$ and $f:I\subset\mathbb{R}^+\to\mathbb{R}$ be a convex function and $f\in L^1_\alpha([a^\alpha,b^\alpha])$ with $0\leq a<b$. Then, for $t\in[0,1]$, the following inequality for conformable fractional integral holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}&f\left(\frac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)\leq h(t^\alpha)\\&\leq\frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x\\&\leq H(t^\alpha)\leq\frac{f(a^\alpha)+f(b^\alpha)}{2}\end{aligned} \tag{26}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}&h(t^\alpha)=(1-t^\alpha)f\left(\frac{(1+t^\alpha)a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha}{2}\right)\\&+t^\alpha f\left(\frac{a^\alpha t^\alpha+(2-t^\alpha)b^\alpha}{2}\right)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}&H(t^\alpha)=\tfrac{1}{2}\left[(1-t^\alpha)f(a^\alpha)\right.\\&\left.+f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)+t^\alpha f(b^\alpha)\right].\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Since f is a convex function on I, by applying (21) on the subinterval $[a^\alpha, t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha]$, with $t\neq1$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}&f\left(\frac{(1+t^\alpha)a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha}{2}\right)\\&\leq\frac{\alpha}{(1-t^\alpha)(b^\alpha-a^\alpha)}\\&\times\int_a^{(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha)^{\frac{1}{\alpha}}}f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x\\&\leq\frac{f(a^\alpha)+f\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)}{2}.\end{aligned} \tag{27}$$

Now, by applying (21) on the subinterval $[t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha, b^\alpha]$, with $t\neq0$, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
&f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}t^{\alpha}+(2-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)\\
\leq\ & \frac{\alpha}{t^{\alpha}(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}\int_{(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})^{\frac{1}{\alpha}}}^{b} f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x \qquad (28)\\
\leq\ & \frac{f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})}{2}.
\end{aligned}$$

Multiplying (27) by $(1-t^{\alpha})$, and (27) by t^{α}, and adding the resulting inequalities, we obtain the following inequalities

$$h(t^{\alpha})\leq\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_{a}^{b}f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x\leq H(t^{\alpha}) \qquad (29)$$

where $h(t^{\alpha})$ and $H(t^{\alpha})$ are defined as in Thereom 12. Using the fact that f is a convex function, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
&f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}+b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)\\
=\ & f\left((1-t^{\alpha})\frac{(1+t^{\alpha})a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha}}{2}\right.\\
&\left.+t^{\alpha}\frac{a^{\alpha}t^{\alpha}+(2-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha}}{2}\right) \qquad (30)\\
\leq\ & (1-t^{\alpha})f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}+[t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha}]}{2}\right)\\
&+t^{\alpha}f\left(\frac{[a^{\alpha}t^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha}]+b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)\\
\leq\ & \frac{1}{2}\left[(1-t^{\alpha})f(a^{\alpha})\right.\\
&\left.+f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})+t^{\alpha}f(b^{\alpha})\right]\\
\leq\ & \frac{f(a^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})}{2}.
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, by (29) and (30) we have (26). □

4. Trapezoid Type Inequalities for Conformable Fractional Integral

We need the following lemma. With the help of this, we give some integral inequalities connected with the right-side of Hermite–Hadamard-type inequalities for conformable fractional integral.

Lemma 3. *Let $\alpha\in(0,1]$ and $f:I\subset\mathbb{R}^{+}\to\mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable function on (a,b) with $0\leq a<b$. If $D_{\alpha}(f)$ be an α-fractional integrable function on $[a^{\alpha},b^{\alpha}]$, then the following identity for conformable fractional integral holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}
&\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_{a}^{b}f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x-\frac{f(a^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})}{2}\\
&=\frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{1}(1-2t^{\alpha}) \qquad (31)\\
&\times D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t.
\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Integrating by parts

$$\begin{aligned}
&\int_{0}^{1}(1-2t^{\alpha})D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\
&=(1-2t^{\alpha})f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})\Big|_{0}^{1}\\
&+2\alpha\int_{0}^{1}f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\
&=-[f(a^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})]+\frac{2\alpha}{(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}\int_{a}^{b}f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x.
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, by multiplying both sides by $\frac{1}{2}$, we have conclusion (31). □

Remark 3. *If we choose $\alpha=1$ in (31), then equality (31) become equality (3).*

Theorem 13. *Let $\alpha\in(0,1]$ and $f:I\subset\mathbb{R}^{+}\to\mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable function on I° and $D_{\alpha}(f)$ be an α-fractional integrable function on I with $0\leq a<b$. If $|f'|$ be a convex function on I, then the following inequality for conformable fractional integral holds:*

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left|\frac{f(a^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})}{2}-\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_{a}^{b}f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x\right|\\
\leq\ & \frac{\alpha(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}{2}\left(\frac{2^{3\alpha^{2}}+\left(6\times2^{\alpha^{2}}\right)-8}{3\alpha\times2^{3\alpha^{2}}}\right) \qquad (32)\\
&\left[\frac{a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})|+b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})|}{2}\right].
\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Using Lemma 3, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
&\left|\frac{f(a^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})}{2}-\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_{a}^{b}f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x\right|\\
&\leq\frac{1}{2}\int_{0}^{1}|1-2t^{\alpha}|\,|D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})b^{\alpha})|\,d_{\alpha}t.
\end{aligned}$$

Since $|f'|$ is a convex function, by using the properties $D_{\alpha}(f\circ g)(t)=f'(g(t))D_{\alpha}g(t)$ and $D_{\alpha}(f)(t)=t^{1-\alpha}f'(t)$, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} & |D_\alpha(f)(t^\alpha a^\alpha + (1-t^\alpha) b^\alpha)| \\ \leq\ & \alpha(b^\alpha - a^\alpha)\left[t^\alpha a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)} |D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)| \right. \\ & \left. + (1-t^\alpha) b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)} |D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)|\right] \end{aligned} \tag{33}$$

Using (33), we have

$$\left|\frac{f(a^\alpha)+f(b^\alpha)}{2} - \frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\, d_\alpha x\right|$$

$$\leq \frac{\alpha(b^\alpha - a^\alpha)}{2}\int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha|$$

$$\times\left[t^\alpha a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)|\right.$$

$$\left.+(1-t^\alpha) b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)|\right] d_\alpha t$$

$$= \frac{\alpha(b^\alpha - a^\alpha)}{2}$$

$$\times\left\{a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)|\int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha| t^\alpha d_\alpha t\right.$$

$$\left.+ b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)|\int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha|(1-t^\alpha)\, d_\alpha t\right\}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} & \int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha|(1-t^\alpha)\, d_\alpha t \\ =\ & \int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha| t^\alpha d_\alpha t = \frac{2^{3\alpha^2} + \left(6\times 2^{\alpha^2}\right) - 8}{3\alpha \times 2^{3\alpha^2}} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the proof is completed. □

Remark 4. *If we choose $\alpha = 1$ in (32), then inequality (32) become inequality (4).*

Theorem 14. *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $f : I \subset \mathbb{R}^+ \to \mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable function on I° and $D_\alpha(f)$ be an α-fractional integrable function on I with $0 \leq a < b$. If $|f'|^q$, $q > 1$, be a convex function on I, then the following inequality for conformable fractional integral holds:*

$$\left|\frac{f(a^\alpha)+f(b^\alpha)}{2} - \frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\, d_\alpha x\right|$$

$$\leq \frac{\alpha(b^\alpha - a^\alpha)}{2}(A(\alpha))^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

$$\left(\frac{a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(a)|^q + b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(b)|^q}{2\alpha}\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \tag{34}$$

where $\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1$, $A(\alpha)$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} A(\alpha) &= \frac{1}{2\alpha(p+1)}\left\{2 - \left(1 - \frac{1}{2^{\alpha^2-1}}\right)^{p+1}\right. \\ &\quad \left. - \left(\frac{1}{2^{\alpha^2-1}} - 1\right)^{p+1}\right\}. \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Using Lemma 3 and Hölder's integral inequality, we find

$$\left|\frac{f(a^\alpha)+f(b^\alpha)}{2} - \frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha - a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\, d_\alpha x\right|$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{2}\int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha||D_\alpha(f)(t^\alpha a^\alpha + (1-t^\alpha) b^\alpha)|\, d_\alpha t$$

$$\leq \frac{1}{2}\left(\int_0^1 |1-2t^\alpha|^p\, d_\alpha t\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$

$$\left(\int_0^1 |D_\alpha(f)(t^\alpha a^\alpha + (1-t^\alpha) b^\alpha)|^q\, d_\alpha t\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}.$$

Since $|f'|^q$ is a convex function, by using the properties $D_\alpha(f \circ g)(t) = f'(g(t))\, D_\alpha g(t)$ and $D_\alpha(f)(t) = t^{1-\alpha} f'(t)$, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} & |D_\alpha(f)(t^\alpha a^\alpha + (1-t^\alpha) b^\alpha)|^q \\ \leq\ & \alpha^q (b^\alpha - a^\alpha)^q \\ & \left[t^\alpha a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)|^q\right. \\ & \left. + (1-t^\alpha) b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)|^q\right]. \end{aligned} \tag{35}$$

By using (35), we have

$$\left|\frac{f(a^{\alpha})+f(b^{\alpha})}{2}-\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x\right|$$
$$\leq \frac{\alpha(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}{2}\left(\int_0^1 |1-2t^{\alpha}|^p\,d_{\alpha}t\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$
$$\left[\int_0^1 \left(t^{\alpha}a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})|^q\right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left.+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})|^q\right)d_{\alpha}t\right]^{\frac{1}{q}}$$
$$\leq \frac{\alpha(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}{2}\left(\int_0^1 |1-2t^{\alpha}|^p\,d_{\alpha}t\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}$$
$$\left(\frac{a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(a)|^q+b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(b)|^q}{2\alpha}\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}.$$

It follows that

$$\begin{aligned}&\int_0^1 |1-2t^{\alpha}|^p\,d_{\alpha}t\\ =&\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{\alpha}}}(1-2t^{\alpha})^p\,d_{\alpha}t+\int_{\frac{1}{2^{\alpha}}}^1(2t^{\alpha}-1)^p\,d_{\alpha}t\\ =&\frac{1}{2\alpha(p+1)}\left\{2-\left(1-\frac{1}{2^{\alpha^2-1}}\right)^{p+1}\right.\\ &\left.-\left(\frac{1}{2^{\alpha^2-1}}-1\right)^{p+1}\right\}\end{aligned}$$

which is completed the proof. □

Remark 5. *If we choose $\alpha=1$ in (34), then inequality (34) become Theorem 2.3. in [7].*

5. Midpoint Type Inequalities for Conformable Fractional Integral

We need the following lemma. With the help of this, we give some integral inequalities connected with the left-side of Hermite–Hadamard-type inequalities for conformable fractional integral.

Lemma 4. *Let $\alpha\in(0,1]$ and $f:I\subset\mathbb{R}^+\to\mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable function on I° with $0\leq a<b$. If $D_{\alpha}(f)$ be an α-fractional integrable function on I, then the following identity for conformable fractional integral holds:*

$$f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}+b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)-\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x$$
$$=\int_0^1 P(t)D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t \tag{36}$$

where

$$P(t)=\begin{cases}t^{\alpha}, & 0\leq t<\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}\\ t^{\alpha}-1, & \frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}\leq t\leq 1.\end{cases}$$

Proof. Integrating by parts

$$\begin{aligned}&\int_0^1 P(t)D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\ =&\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} t^{\alpha}D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\ &+\int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 (t^{\alpha}-1)D_{\alpha}(f)(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\ =&\ t^{\alpha}f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\Big|_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}\\ &-\alpha\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\ &+(t^{\alpha}-1)f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\Big|_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1\\ &-\alpha\int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 f(t^{\alpha}a^{\alpha}+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}t\\ =&\ f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}+b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)-\frac{\alpha}{(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}\int_a^b f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x.\end{aligned}$$

Thus, we have conclusion (36). □

Remark 6. *If we choose $\alpha=1$ in (36), then equality (36) become equality (5).*

Theorem 15. *Let $\alpha\in(0,1]$ and $f:I\subset\mathbb{R}^+\to\mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable function on I° and $D_{\alpha}(f)$ be an α-fractional integrable function on I. If $|f'|$ be a convex function on I, then the following inequality for conformable fractional integrals holds:*

$$\left|\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x-f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}+b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)\right|$$
$$\leq \frac{\alpha(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})}{8} \tag{37}$$
$$\left(\frac{a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})|+b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})|}{\alpha}\right).$$

Proof. Using Lemma 3, it follows that

$$\left|\frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x - f\left(\frac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)\right|$$

$$\leq \left\{\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} t^\alpha \left|D_\alpha(f)\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\right| d_\alpha t \right.$$

$$\left. + \int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 (1-t^\alpha)\left|D_\alpha(f)\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\right| d_\alpha t\right\}.$$

By using (33), we have

$$\left|\frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x - f\left(\frac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)\right|$$

$$\leq \alpha(b^\alpha-a^\alpha)\left\{\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} t^\alpha \left[t^\alpha a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)\right|\right.\right.$$

$$\left. + (1-t^\alpha)b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)\right|\right] d_\alpha t$$

$$+ \int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 (1-t^\alpha)\left[t^\alpha a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)\right|\right.$$

$$\left.\left. + (1-t^\alpha)b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)\right|\right] d_\alpha t\right\}$$

$$= \frac{\alpha(b^\alpha-a^\alpha)}{8} \times \left(\frac{a^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)\right| + b^{\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)\right|}{\alpha}\right).$$

Thus, the proof is completed. □

Remark 7. *If we choose $\alpha = 1$ in (37), then inequality (37) become the inequality (6).*

Theorem 16. *Let $\alpha \in (0,1]$ and $f : I \subset \mathbb{R}^+ \to \mathbb{R}$ be an α-fractional differentiable function on I° and $D_\alpha(f)$ be an α-fractional integrable function on I. If $|f'|^q$, $q > 1$,be a convex function on I, then the following inequality for conformable fractional integrals holds:*

$$\left|\frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x - f\left(\frac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)\right| \tag{38}$$

$$\leq \alpha(b^\alpha-a^\alpha)\left(\frac{1}{\alpha(p+1)2^{p+1}}\right)^{1/p} B(\alpha)$$

where $\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1$, $B(\alpha)$ is defined by

$$B(\alpha) = \left(\frac{a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)\right|^q}{8\alpha} + \frac{3b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)\right|}{8\alpha}\right)^{1/q}$$

$$+ \left(\frac{3a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(a^\alpha)\right|^q}{8\alpha} + \frac{b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_\alpha(f)(b^\alpha)\right|}{8\alpha}\right)^{1/q}.$$

Proof. Using Lemma 3 and from Hölder's inequality, it follows that

$$\left|\frac{\alpha}{b^\alpha-a^\alpha}\int_a^b f(x^\alpha)\,d_\alpha x - f\left(\frac{a^\alpha+b^\alpha}{2}\right)\right|$$

$$\leq \left\{\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} t^\alpha \left|D_\alpha(f)\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\right| d_\alpha t \right.$$

$$\left. + \int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 (1-t^\alpha)\left|D_\alpha(f)\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\right| d_\alpha t\right\}$$

$$\leq \left\{\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} t^{p\alpha} d_\alpha t\right)^{1/p}\right.$$

$$\times \left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}} \left|D_\alpha(f)\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\right|^q d_\alpha t\right)^{1/q}$$

$$+ \left(\int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 (1-t^\alpha)^p d_\alpha t\right)^{1/p}$$

$$\left.\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^1 \left|D_\alpha(f)\left(t^\alpha a^\alpha+(1-t^\alpha)b^\alpha\right)\right|^q d_\alpha t\right)^{1/q}\right\}.$$

By using (35), it follows that

$$\left|\frac{\alpha}{b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha}}\int_a^b f(x^{\alpha})\,d_{\alpha}x - f\left(\frac{a^{\alpha}+b^{\alpha}}{2}\right)\right|$$

$$\leq \alpha(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})\left(\frac{1}{\alpha(p+1)2^{p+1}}\right)^{1/p}$$

$$\times\left\{\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}\left[t^{\alpha}a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})\right|^q\right.\right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left.+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})\right|^q\right]d_{\alpha}t\right)^{1/q}$$

$$+\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2^{1/\alpha}}}^{1}\left[t^{\alpha}a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})\right|^q\right.\right.$$

$$\left.\left.\left.+(1-t^{\alpha})\,b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})\right|^q\right]d_{\alpha}t\right)^{1/q}\right\}$$

$$=\alpha(b^{\alpha}-a^{\alpha})\left(\frac{1}{\alpha(p+1)2^{p+1}}\right)^{1/p}$$

$$\times\left\{\left(\frac{a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})\right|^q}{8\alpha}\right.\right.$$

$$\left.+\frac{3b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})\right|}{8\alpha}\right)^{1/q}$$

$$+\left(\frac{3a^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(a^{\alpha})\right|^q}{8\alpha}\right.$$

$$\left.\left.+\frac{b^{q\alpha(\alpha-1)}\left|D_{\alpha}(f)(b^{\alpha})\right|}{8\alpha}\right)^{1/q}\right\}.$$

Thus, the proof of completed. □

Remark 8. *If we choose $\alpha = 1$ in (38), then inequality (38) become the inequality (2.1) in Theorem 2.3. in [6].*

6. Conclusion

In this work, we have obtained some new Hermite-Hadamard type integral inequalities for conformable integrals and we will investigate some integral inequalities connected with the left and right hand side of the Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for conformable fractional integral. The results presented here would provide generalizations of those given in earlier works and we show that some our results are better than the other results with respect to midpoint inequalities.

Acknowledgments

M.E. Yildirim was partially supported by the Scientific and Technological Research Council of Turkey (TUBITAK Programme 2228-B).

References

[1] Beckenbach, E. F. (1948). Convex functions. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc., 54 439-460. http://dx.doi.org/10.1090/s0002-9904-1948-08994-7.

[2] Hermite, C. (1883). Sur deux limites d'une integrale definie. Mathesis, 3, 82.

[3] Farissi, A.E. (2010). Simple proof and refinement of Hermite-Hadamard inequality. J. Math.Inequal., 4(3), 365-369.

[4] Sarikaya, M.Z., Set, E., Yaldız, H. and Başak, N. (2013). Hermite–Hadamard's inequalities for fractional integrals and related fractional inequalities. Math. Comput. Modell., 57 (9), 2403–2407.

[5] Sarikaya, M.Z. and Aktan, N. (2011). On the generalization of some integral inequalities and their applications, Mathematical and Computer Modelling, 54(9–10), 2175–2182.

[6] Kırmacı, U.S. (2004). Inequalities for differentiable mappings and applications to special means of real numbers and to midpoint formula. Appl. Math. Comput., 147 (1), 137–146.

[7] Dragomir, S.S. and Agarwal, R.P. (1998). Two inequalities for differentiable mappings and applications to special means of real numbers and to trapezoidal formula. Applied Mathematics Letters, 11(5), 91-95.

[8] Mitrinovic, D.S. (1970). Analytic inequalities. Springer, Berlin-Heidelberg-New York.

[9] Abdeljawad, T. (2015). On conformable fractional calculus. Journal of Computational and Applied Mathematics, 279, 57–66.

[10] Anderson D.R. (2016). Taylors formula and integral inequalities for conformable fractional derivatives. In: Pardalos, P., Rassias, T. (eds) Contributions in Mathematics and Engineering. Springer, Cham, 25-43 https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-319-31317-7-2.

[11] Khalil, R., Al horani, M., Yousef, A. and Sababheh, M. (2014). A new definition of fractional derivative. Journal of Computational Applied Mathematics, 264, 65-70.

[12] Iyiola, O.S. and Nwaeze, E.R. (2016). Some new results on the new conformable fractional calculus with application using D'Alambert approach. Progr. Fract. Differ. Appl., 2(2), 115-122.

[13] Abu Hammad, M. and Khalil, R. (2014). Conformable fractional heat differential equations. International Journal of Differential Equations and Applications, 13(3), 177-183.

[14] Abu Hammad, M. and Khalil, R. (2014). Abel's formula and wronskian for conformable fractional differential equations. International Journal of Differential Equations and Applications, 13(3), 177-183.

[15] Akkurt, A., Yıldırım, M.E. and Yıldırım, H. (2017). On some integral inequalities for conformable fractional integrals. Asian Journal of Mathematics and Computer Research, 15(3), 205-212.

[16] Akkurt, A., Yıldırım, M.E. and Yıldırım, H.(2017). A new generalized fractional derivative and integral. Konuralp Journal of Mathematics, 5(2), 248–259.

[17] Budak, H., Usta, F., Sarikaya, M.Z. and Ozdemir, M.E. (2018). On generalization of midpoint type inequalities with generalized fractional integral operators. Revista de la Real Academia de Ciencias Exactas, Fsicas y Naturales. Serie A. Matemticas, https://doi.org/10.1007/s13398-018-0514-z

[18] Usta, F., Budak, H., Sarikaya, M.Z. and Set, E. (2018). On generalization of trapezoid type inequalities for s-convex functions with generalized fractional integral operators. Filomat, 32(6).

Mehmet Zeki Sarıkaya *received his BSc (Maths), MSc (Maths) and PhD (Maths) degrees from Afyon Kocatepe University, Afyonkarahisar, Turkey in 2000, 2002 and 2007 respectively. At present, he is working as a professor in the Department of Mathematics at Duzce University (Turkey) and is the head of the department. Moreover, he is the founder and Editor-in-Chief of Konuralp Journal of Mathematics (KJM). He is the author or coauthor of more than 200 papers in the field of theory of inequalities, potential theory, integral equations and transforms, special functions, time-scales.*

Abdullah Akkurt *holds Bachelor of Mathematics and Master of Science degrees from the University of Kahramanmaraş Sütçü İmam, Turkey. He is an Research Assistant in the Department of Mathematics in the University of Kahramanmaraş Sütçü İmam. His research interests are in special functions and integral inequalities. Presently, he is undertaking his Doctor of Philosophy (Ph.D) degree programme at University of Kahramanmaraş Sütçü İmam.*

Hüseyin Budak *graduated from Kocaeli University, Kocaeli, Turkey in 2010. He received his M.Sc. from Kocaeli University in 2003. Since 2014, he is a Ph.D. student and a research assistant at Duzce University. His research interests focus on functions of bounded variation and theory of inequalities.*

Merve Esra Yıldırım *graduated from Ankara University in 2012. In 2013, she received a master's degree from Ankara University. In 2014, she started her Doctor of Philosophy (Ph.D) degree programme at Ankara University. Since 2015, she is a Ph.D. student Kahramanmaraş Sütçü İmam University. She is an Research Assistant at Sivas Cumhuriyet University since 2015.*

Hüseyin Yıldırım *received his BSc (Maths) degree from Atatürk University, Erzurum, Turkey in 1986. He received his M.Sc. degree from Van Yüzüncü Yıl University in 1990. In 1995, he received a Ph.D. (Maths) degrees from Ankara University. At present, he is working as a professor in the Department of Mathematics at Kahramanmaraş Sütçü İmam University (Turkey) and is the head of the department. He is the author or coauthor of more than 100 papers in the field of theory of inequalities, potential theory, integral equations and transforms, special functions, time-scales.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
english
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.60-72 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00592

RESEARCH ARTICLE

On stable high order difference schemes for hyperbolic problems with the Neumann boundary conditions

Ozgur Yildirim

Department of Mathematics, Yildiz Technical University, Turkey
ozgury@yildiz.edu.tr

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 16 March 2018
Accepted 01 November 2018
Available 31 January 2019

Keywords:
Nonlocal and multipoint BVPs
Stability
Abstract hyperbolic equations
Finite difference methods

AMS Classification 2010:
34B10, 34D20, 35L90, 65N06

ABSTRACT

In this paper, third and fourth order of accuracy stable difference schemes for approximately solving multipoint nonlocal boundary value problems for hyperbolic equations with the Neumann boundary conditions are considered. Stability estimates for the solutions of these difference schemes are presented. Finite difference method is used to obtain numerical solutions. Numerical results of errors and CPU times are presented and are analyzed.

1. Introduction

Many mathematical models of natural and applied sciences phenomena such as fluid mechanics, hydrodynamics, electromagnetics and various areas of physics are based on hyperbolic partial differential equations. Modeling some of these phenomena, imposing nonlocal conditions may be more accurate than classical conditions. Nonlocal boundary condition is a relation between the values of unknown function on the boundary and inside of the given domain. Over the last decades, boundary value problems with nonlocal boundary conditions have become a rapidly growing area of research. Such types of boundary conditions are encountered in applications including thermoelasticity [1], climate control systems [2] and financial mathematics [3]. Boundary value problems for parabolic, elliptic and equations of mixed types are actively studied by many scientists for decades (see [4]- [27]). Stability has been an important research area in the development of numerical methods. Particulary, in this work stability analysis is performed by suitable unconditionally stable difference schemes with an unbounded operator. Some results of this paper, without proof, are presented in [27].

In the present paper, third and fourth order of accuracy stable difference schemes for approximately solving the multipoint nonlocal boundary value problem (NBVP)

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial^2 u(t,x)}{\partial t^2} - \sum\limits_{r=1}^{m} (a_r(x) u_{x_r})_{x_r} = f(t,x), \\ x = (x_1, \dots, x_m) \in \Omega,\ 0 < t < 1, \\ u(0,x) = \sum\limits_{j=1}^{n} \alpha_j u(\lambda_j, x) + \varphi(x), x \in \overline{\Omega}, \\ u_t(0,x) = \sum\limits_{j=1}^{n} \beta_j u_t(\lambda_j, x) + \psi(x), x \in \overline{\Omega} \end{cases} \quad (1)$$

for the multidimensional hyperbolic equation with the Neumann boundary condition

$$\frac{\partial u(t,x)}{\partial \vec{n}}|_{x \in S} = 0, x \in S$$

or mixed conditions

$$u(t,x)|_{x \in S_1} = 0,\ \frac{\partial u(t,x)}{\partial \vec{n}}|_{x \in S_2} = 0,$$

$$x \in S, S = S_1 \cup S_2$$

are considered.

Here

$$\Omega = \{x = (x_1, \cdots, x_m) : 0 < x_j < 1, 1 \leq j \leq m\}$$

is the unit open cube in the m-dimensional Euclidean space $\mathbb{R}^m$, with boundary S, $\overline{\Omega} = \Omega \cup S$ and $a_r(x)$ $(a_r(x) \geq a > 0, x \in \Omega)$, $\varphi(x), \psi(x)$ $\left(x \in \overline{\Omega}\right)$, $f(t,x)$ $(t \in (0,1), x \in \Omega)$ are given smooth functions.

2. Stability Estimates for High Order Difference Schemes

In the present section the third and the fourth order absolutely stable difference schemes and stability estimates for the solutions of these difference schemes are presented. These difference schemes are obtained in [18]. The discretization of problem (1) with Neumann condition or mixed conditions is carried out in two steps. In the first step, the grid sets are defined as

$$\widetilde{\Omega}_h = \{x = x_r = (h_1 r_1, \ldots, h_m r_m),$$

$$r = (r_1, \cdots, r_m), 0 \leq r_j \leq N_j,$$

$$h_j N_j = 1, j = 1, \cdots, m\},$$

$$\Omega_h = \widetilde{\Omega}_h \cap \Omega, S_h = \widetilde{\Omega}_h \cap S,$$

and difference operator A_h^x is given by the formula

$$A_h^x u_x^h = -\sum_{r=1}^{m} \left(a_r(x) u_{\overline{x}_r}^h\right)_{x_r, j_r} \tag{2}$$

acting in the space of grid functions $u^h(x)$ for all $x \in S_h$. Note that A_h^x is a self-adjoint positive definite operator in $L_2(\overline{\Omega}_h)$ with the domain $D\left(A_h^x\right) = \left\{u\left(x\right) \in W_{2h}^2\left(\widetilde{\Omega}_h\right), \frac{\partial u}{\partial \overrightarrow{n}} = 0 \text{ on } S_h\right\}$.

The spaces $L_{2h} = L_2(\widetilde{\Omega}_h)$, $W_{2h}^1 = W_{2h}^1\left(\widetilde{\Omega}_h\right)$ and $W_{2h}^2 = W_{2h}^2\left(\widetilde{\Omega}_h\right)$ of the grid functions

$$\varphi^h(x) = \{\varphi(h_1 r_1, \ldots, h_m r_m)\}$$

are defined on $\widetilde{\Omega}_h$, equipped with norms

$$\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{L_2(\widetilde{\Omega}_h)} = \left(\sum_{x \in \overline{\Omega}_h} \left|\varphi^h(x)\right|^2 h_1 \ldots h_m\right)^{1/2},$$

$$\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1} = \left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}$$

$$+ \left(\sum_{x \in \overline{\Omega_h}} \sum_{r=1}^{m} \left|\left(\varphi^h\right)_{\overline{x}_r, j_r}\right|^2 h_1 \ldots h_m\right)^{1/2},$$

and

$$\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^2} = \left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}$$

$$+ \left(\sum_{x \in \overline{\Omega}_h} \sum_{r=1}^{m} \left|\left(\varphi^h\right)_{\overline{x}_r}\right|^2 h_1 \ldots h_m\right)^{1/2}$$

$$+ \left(\sum_{x \in \overline{\Omega}_h} \sum_{r=1}^{m} \left|\left(\varphi^h\right)_{x_r \overline{x}_r, j_r}\right|^2 h_1 \ldots h_m\right)^{1/2},$$

respectively.

Using difference operator A_h^x the following NBVP

$$\begin{cases} \frac{d^2 v^h(t,x)}{dt^2} + A_h^x v^h(t,x) = f^h(t,x), \\ 0 < t < 1, \ x \in \Omega_h, \\ v^h(0,x) = \sum\limits_{j=1}^{n} \alpha_j v^h\left(\lambda_j, x\right) + \varphi^h(x), x \in \widetilde{\Omega}_h, \\ \frac{dv^h(0,x)}{dt} = \sum\limits_{j=1}^{n} \beta_j v_t^h(\lambda_j, x) + \psi^h(x), x \in \widetilde{\Omega}_h \end{cases} \tag{3}$$

is obtained.

In the next step problem (3) is replaced by the third order of accuracy difference scheme

$$\begin{cases} \tau^{-2}\left(u_{k+1}^h(x) - 2u_k^h(x) + u_{k-1}^h(x)\right) + \frac{2}{3} A_h^x u_k^h(x) \\ + \frac{1}{6} A_h^x\left(u_{k+1}^h(x) + u_{k-1}^h(x)\right) + \frac{1}{12}\tau^2\left(A_h^x\right)^2 u_{k+1}^h(x) \\ = f_k^h(x), f_k^h(x) = \frac{2}{3} f^h(t_k, x) + \frac{1}{6}\left(f^h(t_{k+1}, x)\right) \\ + f^h(t_{k-1}, x)\big) - \frac{1}{12}\tau^2\left(-Af^h(t_{k+1}, x) + f_{tt}^h(t_{k+1}, x)\right), \\ t_k = k\tau, 1 \leq k \leq N-1, N\tau = 1, x \in \Omega_h, \\ u_0^h(x) = \sum\limits_{j=1}^{n} \alpha_j \left\{u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x)\right. \\ + \tau^{-1}\left(u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x) - u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]-1}^h(x)\right)\left(\lambda_j - [\lambda_j/\tau]\tau\right) \\ + \frac{3}{2}\left(f_{[\lambda_j/\tau]} - A_h^x u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x)\right)\left(\lambda_j - [\lambda_j/\tau]\tau\right)^2 \\ + \frac{7}{6}\left(f'_{[\lambda_j/\tau]} - \tau^{-1} A_h^x\left(u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x) - u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]-1}^h(x)\right)\right) \\ \left.\times\left(\lambda_j - [\lambda_j/\tau]\tau\right)^3\right\} + \varphi^h(x), x \in \Omega_h, \\ \left(I + \tau^2\left(A_h^x\right)^4\right)\tau^{-1}\left(u_1^h(x) - u_0^h(x)\right) \\ = \sum\limits_{j=1}^{n} \beta_j \left\{\tau^{-1}\left(u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x) - u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]-1}^h(x)\right)\right. \\ + \left(f_{[\lambda_j/\tau]} - A_h^x u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x)\right)\left(\lambda_j - [\lambda_j/\tau]\tau\right) \\ + \frac{1}{2!}\left(f'_{[\lambda_j/\tau]} - \tau^{-1} A_h^x\left(u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x) - u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]-1}^h(x)\right)\right) \\ \times\left(\lambda_j - [\lambda_j/\tau]\tau\right)^2 + \frac{1}{3!}\left(f''_{[\lambda_j/\tau]} - A_h^x f_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\right. \\ \left. + \left(A_h^x\right)^2 u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x)\right)\left(\lambda_j - [\lambda_j/\tau]\tau\right)^3\Big\} + \psi^h(x), \\ x \in \Omega_h, f_{1,1}^h\left(x\right) = \frac{1}{2} f^h\left(0, x\right) + \frac{\tau}{6} f_t^h\left(0, x\right). \end{cases} \tag{4}$$

Theorem 1. *Let τ and $|h|$ be sufficiently small numbers. Then, the solution of difference scheme (4) satisfies the following stability estimates:*

$$\max_{0\le k\le N}\left\|u_k^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}+\max_{0\le k\le N}\left\|u_k^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}$$
$$\le M_1\left[\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left\|f_k^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}+\left\|\psi^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}+\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}\right.$$
$$\left.+\tau\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^2}+\tau\left\|f_{1,1}^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}\right],$$
$$\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left\|\tau^{-2}\left(u_{k+1}^h-2u_k^h+u_{k-1}^h\right)\right\|_{L_{2h}}$$
$$+\max_{0\le k\le N}\left\|u_k^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^2}\le M_1\left[\left\|f_1^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}\right.$$
$$+\max_{2\le k\le N-1}\left\|\tau^{-1}\left(f_k^h-f_{k-1}^h\right)\right\|_{L_{2h}}+\left\|\psi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}$$
$$\left.+\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^2}+\tau\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^3}+\tau\left\|f_{1,1}^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}\right]$$

where M_1 does not depend on τ, h, $\varphi^h(x)$, $\psi^h(x)$, $f_{1,1}^h$ and $f_k^h, 1\le k<N$.

This theorem is proved in [25] under the following assumption

$$\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\alpha_k|\left\{1+\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|+\frac{3}{2}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^2\right.$$
$$\left.+\frac{7}{6}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^3\right\}$$
$$+\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\beta_k|\left\{1+\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|+\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^2\right.$$
$$\left.+\frac{1}{6}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^3\right\}$$
$$+\frac{1}{2}\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\alpha_k|\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\beta_k|\left\{1+\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^2\right.$$
$$\left.+\frac{7}{12}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^4+\frac{7}{36}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^6\right\}<1. \tag{5}$$

In the third step replacing problem (3) by the fourth order of accuracy difference scheme problem

$$\begin{cases}
\tau^{-2}\left(u_{k+1}^h(x)-2u_k^h(x)+u_{k-1}^h(x)\right)+\frac{5}{6}A_h^x u_k^h(x)\\
+\frac{1}{12}A_h^x\left(u_{k+1}^h(x)+u_{k-1}^h(x)\right)-\frac{1}{72}\tau^2\left(A_h^x\right)^2u_k^h(x)+\frac{\tau^2}{144}\left(A_h^x\right)^2\\
\left(u_{k+1}^h(x)+u_{k-1}^h(x)\right)=f_k^h(x),\ f_k^h(x)=\frac{5}{6}f^h(t_k,x)\\
+\frac{1}{12}\left(f^h(t_{k+1},x)+f^h(t_{k-1},x)\right)+\frac{\tau^2}{72}\left(-A_h^xf^h(t_k,x)+f_{tt}^h(t_k,x)\right)\\
-\frac{\tau^2}{144}\left(-A_h^x\left(f^h(t_{k+1},x)+f^h(t_{k-1},x)\right)\right.\\
\left.+f_{tt}^h(t_{k+1},x)+f_{tt}^h(t_{k-1},x)\right),x\in\Omega_h,\\
t_k=k\tau,1\le k\le N-1,N\tau=1,\\
u_0^h(x)=\left(I-\frac{i\tau}{2}\left(A_h^x\right)^{1/2}+\frac{\tau^2}{12}\left(A_h^x\right)^3\right)^{-1}\\
\sum_{k=1}^{n}\alpha_k\left\{\left(\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)-\frac{7\tau^2}{6}A_h^x\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^3\right)\right.\\
\times\left(u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h(x)-u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]-1}^h(x)\right)+\left(1-\frac{3\tau^2}{2}A_h^x\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^2\right.\\
\left.+\frac{\tau^4}{24}\left(A_h^x\right)^2\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^4\right)u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}^h+\frac{3\tau^2}{2}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^2f_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\\
+\frac{7\tau^3}{6}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^3f'_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}+\frac{\tau^4}{24}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^4f''_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\\
\left.-\frac{\tau^4}{24}A_h^x\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^4f_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\right\}+\varphi^h(x),x\in\widetilde{\Omega}_h,\\
\tau^{-1}\left(u_1^h(x)-u_0^h(x)\right)\\
=\left(I-\frac{\tau^2}{12}A_h^x\right)\left(I+\frac{i\tau}{2}\left(A_h^x\right)^{1/2}+\frac{\tau^2}{12}\left(A_h^x\right)^3\right)^{-1}\\
\times\sum_{k=1}^{n}\beta_k\left\{\left(\frac{1}{\tau}-\frac{\tau}{2}A_h^x\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^2\right.\right.\\
\left.+\frac{\tau^3}{24}\left(A_h^x\right)^2\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^4\right)\left(u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}-u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]-1}\right)\\
+\left(-A_h^x\tau\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)+\frac{\tau^3}{6}\left(A_h^x\right)^2\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^3\right)u_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\\
+\tau f_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)+\frac{\tau^2}{2}f'_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^2\\
+\frac{\tau^3}{6}f''_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^3+\frac{\tau^4}{24}f'''_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^4\\
-\frac{\tau^3}{6}A_h^xf_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^3\\
\left.-\frac{\tau^4}{24}A_h^xf'_{[\lambda_j/\tau]}\left(\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-[\lambda_j/\tau]\right)^4\right\}+\psi^h(x),x\in\widetilde{\Omega}_h.
\end{cases} \tag{6}$$

is obtained.

Theorem 2. *Let τ and h be sufficiently small numbers. Then, solution of difference scheme (6) obeys the following stability estimates:*

$$\max_{1\le k\le N}\left\|\frac{u_k^h+u_{k-1}^h}{2}\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}+\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left\|\frac{u_{k+1}^h-u_{k-1}^h}{2\tau}\right\|_{L_{2h}}$$
$$\le M_1\left[\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left\|f_k^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}+\left\|\psi^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}\right.$$
$$\left.+\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}+\tau\left\|f_{2,2}^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}\right],$$
$$\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left\|\tau^{-2}\left(u_{k+1}^h-2u_k^h+u_{k-1}^h\right)\right\|_{L_{2h}}$$
$$+\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left\|\frac{u_{k+1}^h-u_{k-1}^h}{2\tau}\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}$$
$$+\max_{1\le k\le N}\left\|\frac{u_k^h+u_{k-1}^h}{2}\right\|_{W_{2h}^2}\le M_1\left[\left\|f_1^h\right\|_{L_{2h}}\right.$$
$$+\max_{2\le k\le N-1}\left\|\tau^{-1}\left(f_k^h-f_{k-1}^h\right)\right\|_{L_{2h}}$$
$$\left.+\left\|\psi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}+\left\|\varphi^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^2}+\tau\left\|f_{2,2}^h\right\|_{W_{2h}^1}\right].$$

Here M_1 does not depend on τ, h, $\varphi^h(x)$, $\psi^h(x)$, $f^h_{2,2}$ and $f^h_k, 1 \le k < N$.

This theorem is proved in [25] under the following assumption

$$\left\{\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\alpha_k|\left\{1+\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|+\frac{3}{2}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^2 +\frac{7}{6}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^3+\frac{1}{24}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^4\right\} +\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\beta_k|\left\{1+\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|+\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^2 +\frac{1}{6}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^3+\frac{1}{24}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^4\right\} +\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\alpha_k|\sum_{k=1}^{n}|\beta_k|\left\{1+\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^2 +\frac{1}{2}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^4+\frac{1}{9}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^6 +\frac{1}{576}\left|\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}-\left[\frac{\lambda_k}{\tau}\right]\right|^8\right\} < 1. \qquad (7)$$

3. Numerical Analysis

In the present section some examples are presented to verify theoretical statements. Finite difference method is used and symbolic computations are carried out by Matlab. Three problems for one dimensional hyperbolic equations with the Neumann boundary conditions and mixed type boundary conditions are considered. Results of numerical experiments are presented in tables and are analyzed.
The grid set $[0,1]_\tau\times\ [0,\pi]_h$ of a family of grid points depending on the small parameters τ and h with

$$[0,1]_\tau\times[0,\pi]_h=\{(t_k,x_n): t_k=k\tau, 0\le k\le N,$$

$$N\tau=1, x_n=nh,\ \ 0\le n\le M, Mh=\pi\}$$

is considered.

Example 1. *Let us consider problem*

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial^2 u(t,x)}{\partial t^2}-\frac{\partial^2 u(t,x)}{\partial x^2}=e^{-t}(\sin^2 x-2\cos 2x),\\ 0<t<1, 0<x<\pi,\\ u(0,x)=\frac{1}{10}u(1,x)+\frac{1}{10}u(\frac{1}{2},x)\\ +(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2 x, 0\le x\le\pi,\\ u_t(0,x)=\frac{1}{10}u_t(1,x)+\frac{1}{10}u_t(\frac{1}{2},x)\\ +(-1+\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2 x, 0\le x\le\pi,\\ u_x(t,0)=u_x(t,\pi)=0 \end{cases} \qquad (8)$$

for one-dimensional hyperbolic equation with constant coefficients.

The exact solution of this problem is

$$u\left(t,x\right)=e^{-t}\sin^2 x.$$

In approximately solving problem (8), third and fourth order of accuracy difference schemes (4) and (6) are used respectively.

In the first step, applying simple formulas

$$\frac{u(x_{n+1})-2u(x_n)+u(x_{n-1})}{h^2}-u^{''}\left(x_n\right)=O\left(h^2\right), \quad (9)$$

$$\frac{35u(0)-104u(0+\tau)+114u(0+2\tau)-56u(0+3\tau)+11u(0+4\tau)}{12\tau^2}$$

$$-u^{''}\left(0\right)=O\left(\tau^3\right), \qquad (10)$$

$$\frac{-5u(0)+18u(h)-24u(2h)+14u(3h)-3u(4h)}{2\tau^3}$$

$$-u^{'''}\left(0\right)=O\left(\tau^4\right), \qquad (11)$$

and using difference scheme (4), the second order of accuracy in t third order of accuracy in x difference scheme

$$
\begin{cases}
\frac{u_n^{k+1}-2u_n^k+u_n^{k-1}}{\tau^2}-\frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{u_{n+1}^k-2u_n^k+u_{n-1}^k}{h^2}\right) \\
-\frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{u_{n+1}^{k+1}-2u_n^{k+1}+u_{n-1}^{k+1}}{h^2}+\frac{u_{n+1}^{k-1}-2u_n^{k-1}+u_{n-1}^{k-1}}{h^2}\right) \\
+\frac{\tau^2}{12}\left(\frac{u_{n+2}^{k+1}-4u_{n+1}^{k+1}+6u_n^{k+1}-4u_{n-1}^{k+1}+u_{n-2}^{k+1}}{h^4}\right)=\varphi_n^k, \\
\varphi_n^k=\left\{\frac{2}{3}e^{-t_k}+\frac{1}{6}(e^{-t_{k+1}}+e^{-t_{k-1}})\right. \\
\left.-\frac{\tau^2}{12}e^{-t_{k+1}}\right\}\sin^2 x_n-2\left\{\frac{2}{3}e^{-t_k}\right. \\
\left.+\frac{1}{6}(e^{-t_{k+1}}+e^{-t_{k-1}})+\frac{\tau^2}{3}e^{-t_{k+1}}\right\}\cos 2x_n, \\
t_k=k\tau,\ 1\le k\le N-1, N\tau=1, \\
x_n=nh, 2\le n\le M-2, Mh=\pi, \\
u_n^0-\frac{1}{8}u_n^{(N/2)}-\frac{1}{8}u_n^N \\
=(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2 x_n, 0\le n\le M, \\
(u_n^1-u_n^0) \\
-\frac{\tau^2}{12}\left(\frac{(u_{n+1}^1-u_{n+1}^0)-2(u_n^1-u_n^0)+(u_{n-1}^1-u_{n-1}^0)}{h^2}\right) \\
+\frac{\tau^4}{144}\left[\frac{(u_{n+2}^1-u_{n+2}^0)-4(u_{n+1}^1-u_{n+1}^0)+6(u_n^1-u_n^0)}{h^4}\right. \\
\left.+\frac{-4(u_{n-1}^1-u_{n-1}^0)+(u_{n-2}^1-u_{n-2}^0)}{h^4}\right]=\varphi_n^N, \\
\varphi_n^N=(-\tau+\frac{\tau^2}{2}-\frac{\tau^3}{6}+\frac{\tau^4}{6})\sin^2 x \\
+(\frac{\tau^3}{6}+\frac{\tau^4}{12}+\frac{35}{36}\tau^5-\frac{5}{18}\tau^6-\frac{5}{54}\tau^7)\cos 2x \\
+(\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}}),\quad 2\le n\le M-2
\end{cases}
\tag{12}
$$

for the approximate solution of problem (8) is obtained. By rearranging like terms of the problem, the following linear system

$$AU_{n+2}+BU_{n+1}+CU_n+DU_{n-1}+EU_{n-2}=R\varphi_n, \tag{13}$$

$$2\le n\le M-2$$

with $(N+1)\times(N+1)$ matrix coefficients

$$
A=\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & x & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & x & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & x & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & x & 0 \\
-r & r & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix},
$$

$$
B=\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
y & w & v & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & y & w & \ddots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ddots & w & v & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & y & w & v \\
s & -s & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix},
$$

$$
C=\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & \dots 0 & \frac{-1}{8} & 0\dots & 0 & \frac{-1}{8} \\
l & n & m & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
0 & l & n & m & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & \ddots & n & m & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & \dots & l & n & m \\
-t & t & 0 & \dots & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix},
$$

$$D=B,\ E=A,$$

$$
R=\begin{bmatrix}
1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\
\vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 & 0 \\
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1
\end{bmatrix},
$$

where the entries are

$$x=\frac{\tau^2}{12h^4}, v=-\frac{1}{6h^2}-\frac{\tau^2}{3h^4}, w=-\frac{2}{3h^2},$$

$$y=-\frac{1}{6h^2}, m=\frac{1}{\tau^2}+\frac{1}{3h^2}+\frac{\tau^2}{2h^4},$$

$$n=-\frac{2}{\tau^2}+\frac{4}{3h^2}, l=\frac{1}{\tau^2}+\frac{1}{3h^2},$$

$$r=\frac{\tau^4}{144h^4}, s=\frac{\tau^2}{12h^2}+\frac{\tau^4}{36h^4}$$

$$t=1+\frac{\tau^2}{6h^2}+\frac{\tau^4}{24h^4},$$

and $(N+1)\times 1$ column matrices

$$
\varphi_n^k=\begin{bmatrix}
\varphi_n^0 \\
\varphi_n^1 \\
\vdots \\
\varphi_n^N
\end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times 1}, 0\le k\le N,
$$

with

$$\varphi_n^0=(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2(x_n), 0\le n\le M,$$

$$
\begin{aligned}
\varphi_n^N &= \{-\tau+\frac{\tau^2}{2}-\frac{\tau^3}{6}+\frac{\tau^4}{6}\}\sin^2(x_n) \\
&+\left\{\frac{\tau^3}{6}+\frac{\tau^4}{12}+\frac{35}{36}\tau^5\right. \\
&\left.-\frac{5}{18}\tau^6-\frac{5}{54}\tau^7\right\}\cos 2x_n \\
&+(\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2(x_n)
\end{aligned}
$$

$$\varphi_n^k = \left\{\frac{2}{3}e^{-t_k} + \frac{1}{6}(e^{-t_{k+1}} + e^{-t_{k-1}}) - \frac{\tau^2}{12}e^{-t_{k+1}}\right\}\sin^2 x_n,$$

$$+2\left\{\frac{2}{3}e^{-t_k} + \frac{1}{6}(e^{-t_{k+1}} + e^{-t_{k-1}}) + \frac{\tau^2}{3}e^{-t_{k+1}}\right\}\cos 2x_n,$$

$$1 \le k \le N-1,$$

$$U_s^k = \begin{bmatrix} u_s^0 \\ u_s^1 \\ \vdots \\ u_s^N \end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times 1},$$

$$0 \le k \le N, s = n-2, n-1, n, n+1, n+2$$

is obtained.

The modified Gauss elimination method is used and the following formula

$$U_n = \alpha_{n+1}U_{n+1} + \beta_{n+1}U_{n+2} + \gamma_{n+1},$$

$$n = M-2, ...2, 1, 0$$

is applied where α_j, β_j $(j = 1, \ldots, M)$ are $(N+1)\times(N+1)$ square matrices and γ_j are $(N+1)\times 1$ column matrices for the solution of difference scheme (12). From that one can obtain formulas $\alpha_{n+1}, \beta_{n+1}, \gamma_{n+1}$

$$\begin{cases} \beta_{n+1} = -(C + D\alpha_n + E\beta_{n-1} + E\alpha_{n-1}\alpha_n)^{-1}A, \\ \alpha_{n+1} = -(C + D\alpha_n + E\beta_{n-1} + E\alpha_{n-1}\alpha_n)^{-1} \\ \times(B + D\beta_n + E\alpha_{n-1}\beta_n), \\ \gamma_{n+1} = +(C + D\alpha_n + E\beta_{n-1} + E\alpha_{n-1}\alpha_n)^{-1} \\ \times(R\varphi_n - D\gamma_n - E\alpha_{n-1}\gamma_n - E\gamma_{n-1}), \end{cases} \tag{14}$$

where $n = 2 : M-2$ and

$$\gamma_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ \vdots \\ 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\alpha_2 = \begin{bmatrix} 4/5 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & 4/5 & \ldots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & 4/5 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$\beta_2 = \begin{bmatrix} -1/5 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & -1/5 & \ldots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \ldots & -1/5 \end{bmatrix}.$$

In a similar manner the following formulas

$$U_M = -[P + Q(4I - \alpha_{M-1})^{-1}(\beta_{M-1} + 3I)]^{-1} \times \{R + Q(4I - \alpha_{M-1})^{-1}\gamma_{M-1}\} \tag{15}$$

$$U_{M-1} = -(P+Q)^{-1}R \tag{16}$$

$$U_{M-2} = (4I - \alpha_{M-2})^{-1} \times \{(5I + \beta_{M-2})U_{M-1} + \gamma_{M-2}\}, \tag{17}$$

where

$$P = \frac{1}{6h}(11I + 9\beta_{M-1} - 2\alpha_{M-2}\beta_{M-1}),$$

$$Q = \frac{1}{6h}(-18I + 9\alpha_{M-1} - 2(\alpha_{M-2}\alpha_{M-1} + \beta_{M-2}))$$

$$R = \frac{1}{6h}(9\gamma_{M-1} - 2\alpha_{M-2}\gamma_{M-1} - 2\gamma_{M-2})$$

are obtained. The system

$$U_0 = \alpha_1 U_1 + \beta_1 U_2 + \gamma_1 \tag{18}$$

where

$$\alpha_1 = \frac{-1}{h}T^{-1}, \beta_1 = 0, \gamma_1 = \frac{h}{2}T^{-1}\varphi_n^0$$

is used for the boundary condition $u_x(t, 0) = 0$ of third order of accuracy difference scheme. Here

$$T = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \lambda_3 & \lambda_4 & \lambda_5 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\ a & b & a & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0 \\ 0 & a & b & a & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \vdots \\ \vdots & 0 & a & b & a & 0 & \ldots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ldots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vdots & \ldots & \ldots & 0 & a & b & a & 0 \\ 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0 & a & b & a \\ 0 & \ldots & 0 & \lambda_5 & \lambda_4 & \lambda_3 & \lambda_2 & \lambda_1 \end{bmatrix} \tag{19}$$

with

$$
\begin{aligned}
\lambda_1 &= \left(-\frac{1}{h}-\frac{35h}{24\tau^2}+\frac{5h^2}{12\tau^3}\right),\\
\lambda_2 &= \left(\frac{104h}{24\tau^2}-\frac{18h^2}{12\tau^3}\right),\\
\lambda_3 &= \left(-\frac{114h}{24\tau^2}+\frac{24h^2}{12\tau^3}\right),\\
\lambda_4 &= \left(\frac{56h}{24\tau^2}-\frac{14h^2}{12\tau^3}\right),\\
\lambda_5 &= \left(-\frac{11h}{24\tau^2}+\frac{3h^2}{12\tau^3}\right),\\
a &= -\frac{h}{2\tau^2}\ ,\ \ b=\left(-\frac{1}{h}+\frac{h}{\tau^2}\right).
\end{aligned}
$$

In the next step difference scheme (6) and the formulas

$$\frac{-3u\left(1\right)+4u\left(1-h\right)-u\left(1-2h\right)}{2h}-u^{'}\left(1\right)=O\left(h^2\right),$$

$$\frac{1}{4\tau^3}\left(-17u\left(0\right)+71u\left(0+\tau\right)-118u\left(0+2\tau\right)\right.$$

$$\left.+98u\left(0+3\tau\right)-41u\left(0+4\tau\right)+7u(0+5\tau)\right)$$

$$-u^{'''}\left(0\right)=O\left(\tau^3\right),$$

$$\frac{u\left(0\right)-2u\left(0+\tau\right)+u\left(0+2\tau\right)}{\tau^2}-u^{''}\left(0\right)=O\left(\tau^3\right)$$

are used to obtain second order of accuracy in t and fourth order of accuracy in x difference scheme

$$
\begin{cases}
\frac{u_n^{k+1}-2u_n^k+u_n^{k-1}}{\tau^2}-\frac{5}{6}\left(\frac{u_{n+1}^k-2u_n^k+u_{n-1}^k}{h^2}\right)\\
-\frac{1}{12}\left(\frac{u_{n+1}^{k+1}-2u_n^{k+1}+u_{n-1}^{k+1}}{h^2}+\frac{u_{n+1}^{k-1}-2u_n^{k-1}+u_{n-1}^{k-1}}{h^2}\right)\\
-\frac{\tau^2}{72}\left(\frac{u_{n+2}^k-4u_{n+1}^k+6u_n^k-4u_{n-1}^k+u_{n-2}^k}{h^4}\right)\\
+\frac{\tau^2}{144}\left(\frac{u_{n+2}^{k+1}-4u_{n+1}^{k+1}+6u_n^{k+1}-4u_{n-1}^{k+1}+u_{n-2}^{k+1}}{h^4}\right.\\
\left.+\frac{u_{n+2}^{k-1}-4u_{n+1}^{k-1}+6u_n^{k-1}-4u_{n-1}^{k-1}+u_{n-2}^{k-1}}{h^4}\right)=\varphi_n^k,\\
\varphi_n^k=\left\{(\frac{5}{6}+\frac{\tau^2}{72})e^{-t_k}\right.\\
\left.+(\frac{1}{12}-\frac{\tau^2}{144})(e^{-t_{k+1}}+e^{-t_{k-1}})\right\}\sin^2(x_n)\\
+\left\{(-\frac{5}{3}+\frac{\tau^2}{9})e^{-t_k}\right.\\
\left.-(\frac{1}{6}+\frac{\tau^2}{18})(e^{-t_{k+1}}+e^{-t_{k-1}})\right\}\cos 2x_n\\
t_k=k\tau,\ 1\le k\le N-1, N\tau=1,\\
x_n=nh, 1\le n\le M-1, Mh=\pi,\\
\varphi_n^0=(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2\left(x_n\right),\\
0\le n\le M, \left(u_n^1-u_n^0\right)\\
-\frac{\tau^2}{12}\left(\frac{\left(u_{n+1}^1-u_{n+1}^0\right)-2\left(u_n^1-u_n^0\right)+\left(u_{n-1}^1-u_{n-1}^0\right)}{h^2}\right)\\
+\frac{\tau^4}{144h^4}\left[(u_{n+2}^1-u_{n+2}^0)-4\left(u_{n+1}^1-u_{n+1}^0\right)\right.\\
+6\left(u_n^1-u_n^0\right)-4\left(u_{n-1}^1-u_{n-1}^0\right)\\
\left.+(u_{n-2}^1-u_{n-2}^0)\right]=\varphi_n^N,\\
\varphi_n^N=\left(-\tau+\frac{\tau^2}{2}-\frac{\tau^3}{6}+\frac{\tau^4}{24}-\frac{\tau^5}{24}\right)\sin^2\left(x_n\right)\\
+\left(\frac{\tau^3}{6}-\frac{\tau^4}{12}-\frac{7}{36}\tau^5-\frac{15}{144}\tau^6\right.\\
\left.-\frac{25}{432}\tau^7-\frac{5}{432}\tau^8\right)\cos 2x_n\\
+\tau(\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2\left(x_n\right),\\
2\le n\le M-2, 0\le k\le N,\\
u_1^0-u_0^0=\frac{h}{2}\left(\frac{45u_0^0-154u_0^1+214u_0^2-156u_0^3+61u_0^4-10u_0^5}{12\tau^2}\right)\\
-\frac{h^2}{64\tau^3}\left(17u_0^0-71u_0^1+118u_0^2\right.\\
\left.-98u_0^3+41u_0^4-7u_0^5\right)\\
u_1^N-u_0^N=\frac{h}{212\tau^2}\left(45u_0^N-154u_0^{N-1}+214u_0^{N-2}\right.\\
\left.-156u_0^{N-3}+61u_0^{N-4}-10u_0^{N-5}\right)\\
-\frac{h^2}{64\tau^3}\left(17u_0^N-71u_0^{N-1}+118u_0^{N-2}\right.\\
\left.-98_0^{N-3}+41u_0^{N-4}-7u_0^{N-5}\right), u_1^k-u_0^k\\
=\frac{h}{2}\left(\frac{u_0^{k+1}-2u_0^k+u_0^{k-1}}{\tau^2}-\varphi_0^k\right),\quad 1\le k\le N-1
\end{cases}
\tag{20}
$$

for the approximate solution of problem (8). By rearranging coefficients in the problem we have again the $(N+1)\times(N+1)$ linear system (13) with matrix coefficients

$$
A=\begin{bmatrix}
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0\\
x & y & x & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0\\
0 & x & y & \ddots & 0 & 0 & 0\\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots\\
0 & 0 & 0 & \ddots & y & x & 0\\
0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & x & y & x\\
-r & r & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 & 0
\end{bmatrix},
$$

$$B=\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0\\ v & w & v & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & v & w & \ddots & 0 & 0 & 0\\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ddots & w & v & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & v & w & v\\ s & -s & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$C=\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \ldots 0 & \frac{-1}{8} & 0\ldots & 0 & \frac{-1}{8}\\ m & n & m & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0\\ 0 & m & n & m & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0\\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \ddots & n & m & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & m & n & m\\ -t & t & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix},$$

$$D=B,\ E=A,$$

$$R=\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \ldots & 0 & 0\\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 1 & 0\\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \ldots & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix},$$

and with entries

$$x=\frac{\tau^2}{144h^4}, y=-\frac{\tau^2}{72h^4}, v=-\frac{1}{12h^2}-\frac{\tau^2}{36h^4},$$

$$w=-\frac{5}{6h^2}+\frac{\tau^2}{18h^4},$$

$$m=\frac{1}{\tau^2}+\frac{1}{6h^2}+\frac{\tau^2}{24h^4},$$

$$n=-\frac{2}{\tau^2}+\frac{5}{3h^2}-\frac{\tau^2}{12h^4},$$

$$r=\frac{\tau^4}{144h^4}, s=\frac{\tau^4}{36h^4}+\frac{\tau^2}{12h^2},$$

$$t=1+\frac{\tau^2}{6h^2}+\frac{\tau^4}{24h^4}.$$

Here U_s^k and φ_n^k are defined as

$$U_s^k=\begin{bmatrix} u_s^0\\ u_s^1\\ \vdots\\ u_s^N \end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times 1},$$

$$0\le k\le N, s=n-2, n-1, n, n+1, n+2.$$

$$\varphi_n^k=\begin{bmatrix} \varphi_n^0\\ \varphi_n^1\\ \cdot\\ \varphi_n^N \end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times 1}, 0\le k\le N,$$

$$\varphi_n^0=(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2(x_n), 0\le n\le M,$$

$$\varphi_n^N=\left(-\tau+\frac{\tau^2}{2}-\frac{\tau^3}{6}+\frac{\tau^4}{24}+\frac{\tau^5}{24}\right)\sin^2(x_n)$$

$$\varphi_n^k=\Big\{(\frac{5}{6}+\frac{\tau^2}{72})e^{-t_k}$$
$$+(\frac{1}{12}-\frac{\tau^2}{144})(e^{-t_{k+1}}+e^{-t_{k-1}})\Big\}\sin^2(x_n)$$
$$+\Big\{(-\frac{5}{3}+\frac{\tau^2}{9})e^{-t_k}$$
$$-(\frac{1}{6}+\frac{\tau^2}{18})(e^{-t_{k+1}}+e^{-t_{k-1}})\Big\}\cos 2x_n$$
$$+\Big\{\frac{\tau^3}{6}-\frac{\tau^4}{12}-\frac{7}{36}\tau^5-\frac{15}{144}\tau^6$$
$$-\frac{25}{432}\tau^7-\frac{5}{432}\tau^8\Big\}\cos 2x_n$$
$$+(\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2(x_n).$$

In exactly the same manner as Example 1 the linear system for the fourth order of accuracy difference scheme is solved with the following new formulas

$$U_M=-[P+Q(4I-\alpha_{M-1})^{-1}(\beta_{M-1}+3I)]^{-1}$$
$$\times\left[R+Q(4I-\alpha_{M-1})^{-1}\gamma_{M-1}\right], \quad (21)$$

$$U_{M-1}=[(\beta_{M-2}+5I)-(4I-\alpha_{M-2})\alpha_{M-1}]^{-1}$$
$$\times[(4I-\alpha_{M-2})\gamma_{M-1}-\gamma_{M-2}] \quad (22)$$

$$U_{M-2}=(4I-\alpha_{M-2})^{-1} \quad (23)$$
$$\times\{(5I+\beta_{M-2})U_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-2}\}$$

where

$$P=\frac{1}{12h}[25I+36\beta_{M-1}-16\alpha_{M-2}\beta_{M-1}$$
$$+3(\alpha_{M-3}\alpha_{M-2}\beta_{M-1}+\beta_{M-3}\beta_{M-1})],$$

$$Q=\frac{1}{12h}\left[-48I+36\alpha_{M-1}\right.$$

$$-16(\alpha_{M-2}\alpha_{M-1}+\beta_{M-1})$$

$$\left.+3(\alpha_{M-3}\alpha_{M-2}\alpha_{M-1}+\alpha_{M-3}\beta_{M-2}+\alpha_{M-1}\beta_{M-3})\right],$$

$$R=\frac{1}{12h}\left[36\gamma_{M-1}-16(\alpha_{M-2}\gamma_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-2})\right.$$

$$+3\left(\alpha_{M-3}\alpha_{M-2}\gamma_{M-1}\right.$$

$$\left.\left.+\alpha_{M-3}\gamma_{M-2}+\beta_{M-3}\gamma_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-3})\right)\right].$$

For the boundary condition $u_x(t,0)=0$, the system (18) with the matrix

$$T=\begin{bmatrix} \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \lambda_3 & \lambda_4 & \lambda_5 & \lambda_6 & 0 & \ldots & 0\\ a & b & a & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0\\ 0 & a & b & a & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & 0\\ 0 & 0 & a & b & a & 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \vdots\\ \vdots & \ldots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \ldots & \ldots & \vdots\\ 0 & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & \ldots & a & b & a & 0\\ 0 & \ldots & 0 & \lambda_6 & \lambda_5 & \lambda_4 & \lambda_3 & \lambda_2 & \lambda_1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (24)$$

and the new entries

$$\lambda_1=\left(-\frac{1}{h}-\frac{45h}{24\tau^2}+\frac{17h^2}{24\tau^3}\right),$$

$$\lambda_2=\left(\frac{154h}{24\tau^2}-\frac{71h^2}{24\tau^3}\right),$$

$$\lambda_3=\left(-\frac{214h}{24\tau^2}+\frac{118h^2}{24\tau^3}\right),$$

$$\lambda_4=\left(\frac{156h}{24\tau^2}-\frac{98h^2}{12\tau^3}\right),$$

$$\lambda_5=\left(-\frac{61h}{24\tau^2}+\frac{41h^2}{24\tau^3}\right),\ \lambda_6=(\frac{10h}{24\tau^2}-\frac{7h^2}{24\tau^3}),$$

$$a=-\frac{h}{2\tau^2},\quad b=\left(-\frac{1}{h}+\frac{h}{\tau^2}\right)$$

is considered.

Example 2. *Consider*

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial^2 u(t,x)}{\partial t^2}-\frac{\partial^2 u(t,x)}{\partial x^2}=e^{-t}(\sin^2 x-2\cos 2x),\\ 0<t<1, 0<x<\pi,\\ u(0,x)=\frac{1}{10}u(1,x)+\frac{1}{10}u(\frac{1}{2},x)\\ +(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2 x, 0\le x\le\pi,\\ u_t(0,x)=\frac{1}{10}u_t(1,x)+\frac{1}{10}u_t(\frac{1}{2},x)\\ +(-1+\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2 x, 0\le x\le\pi,\\ u(t,0)=u_x(t,\pi)=0,\ 0\le t\le 1 \end{cases} \quad (25)$$

for one dimensional hyperbolic equation.

Note that this problem is similar to Example 1, with different mixed boundary conditions. Again exact solution of the problem is

$$u(t,x)=e^{-t}\sin^2 x.$$

In finding the approximate solution of problem (25), the method of first example is applied. Third and fourth orders of accuracy difference schemes (4), (6) are used. Approximating the boundary condition $u_x(t,\pi)=0$ the following formulas

$$U_M=-[P+Q(4I-\alpha_{M-1})^{-1}(\beta_{M-1}+3)]^{-1}$$

$$\times\{R+Q(4-\alpha_{M-1})^{-1}\gamma_{M-1}\}$$

$$U_{M-1}=-(P+Q)^{-1}R$$

$$U_{M-2}=(4I-\alpha_{M-2})^{-1}\{(5I+\beta_{M-2})U_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-2}\}$$

where

$$P=\frac{1}{6h}(11I+9\beta_{M-1}-2\alpha_{M-2}\beta_{M-1})U_M,$$

$$Q=\frac{1}{6h}\left[-18I+9\alpha_{M-1}\right.$$

$$\left.-2\left(\alpha_{M-2}\alpha_{M-1}+\beta_{M-2}\right)\right]U_{M-1}$$

$$R=\frac{1}{6h}(9\gamma_{M-1}-2\alpha_{M-2}\gamma_{M-1}-2\gamma_{M-2}),$$

for the third order of accuracy difference scheme and

$$U_M=-[P+Q(4I-\alpha_{M-1})^{-1}(\beta_{M-1}+3I)]^{-1}$$

$$\times\{R+Q(4I-\alpha_{M-1})^{-1}\gamma_{M-1}\},$$

$$U_{M-1}=[(\beta_{M-2}+5I)-(4I-\alpha_{M-2})\alpha_{M-1}]^{-1}$$

$$\times[(4I-\alpha_{M-2})\gamma_{M-1}-\gamma_{M-2}]$$

$$U_{M-2}=(4I-\alpha_{M-2})^{-1}\left\{(5I+\beta_{M-2})U_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-2}\right\},$$

where

$$P=\frac{1}{12h}\left[25I+36\beta_{M-1}-16\alpha_{M-2}\beta_{M-1}\right.$$

$$\left.+3(\alpha_{M-3}\alpha_{M-2}\beta_{M-1}+\beta_{M-3}\beta_{M-1})\right],$$

$$Q=\frac{1}{12h}\left[-48I+36\alpha_{M-1}\right.$$

$$-16(\alpha_{M-2}\alpha_{M-1}+\beta_{M-1})+3\left(\alpha_{M-3}\alpha_{M-2}\alpha_{M-1}\right.$$

$$\left.\left.+\alpha_{M-3}\beta_{M-2}+\alpha_{M-1}\beta_{M-3}\right)\right],$$

$$R=\frac{1}{12h}\left[36\gamma_{M-1}-16(\alpha_{M-2}\gamma_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-2})\right.$$

$$+3((\alpha_{M-3}\alpha_{M-2}\gamma_{M-1}$$

$$\left.+\alpha_{M-3}\gamma_{M-2}+\beta_{M-3}\gamma_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-3})\right]$$

for the fourth order of accuracy difference scheme are used. For the boundary condition $u(t,0)=0$ the following initial matrices

$$\alpha_1=\begin{bmatrix}0&0&\dots&0\\0&0&\dots&0\\\vdots&\vdots&\dots&\vdots\\0&0&\dots&0\end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times(N+1)},$$

$$\beta_1=\begin{bmatrix}0&0&\dots&0\\0&0&\dots&0\\\vdots&\vdots&\dots&\vdots\\0&0&\dots&0\end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times(N+1)}$$

$$\gamma_1=\gamma_2=\begin{bmatrix}0\\0\\\vdots\\0\end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times1},$$

$$\alpha_2=\begin{bmatrix}4/5&0&\dots&0\\0&4/5&\dots&0\\\vdots&\vdots&\ddots&\vdots\\0&0&\dots&4/5\end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times(N+1)},$$

$$\beta_2=\begin{bmatrix}-1/5&0&\dots&0\\0&-1/5&\dots&0\\\vdots&\vdots&\ddots&\vdots\\0&0&\dots&-1/5\end{bmatrix}_{(N+1)\times(N+1)}$$

are used in the formulae which were presented in (14).

Example 3. *Consider the NBVP with mixed condition*

$$\begin{cases}\frac{\partial^2u(t,x)}{\partial t^2}-\frac{\partial^2u(t,x)}{\partial x^2}=e^{-t}(\sin^2x-2\cos2x),\\0<t<1,0<x<\pi,\\u(0,x)=\frac{1}{10}u(1,x)+\frac{1}{10}u(\frac{1}{2},x)\\+(1-\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}-\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2x,0\le x\le\pi,\\u_t(0,x)=\frac{1}{10}u_t(1,x)+\frac{1}{10}u_t(\frac{1}{2},x)\\+(-1+\frac{1}{10}e^{-1}+\frac{1}{10}e^{-\frac{1}{2}})\sin^2x,0\le x\le\pi,\\u_x(t,0)=u(t,\pi)=0,\ \ 0\le t\le1\end{cases}\tag{26}$$

for one dimensional hyperbolic equation.

Note that this problem is similar to problem of Example1 with different boundary conditions. Exact solution of this problem is

$$u\left(t,x\right)=e^{-t}\sin^2x.$$

The approximate solution of problem (26) is obtained by a similar procedure as in the first example. Third and fourth order of accuracy difference schemes (4), (6) are used and the system

$$U_0=\alpha_1U_1+\beta_1U_2+\gamma_1$$

with

$$\alpha_1=\frac{-1}{h}T^{-1},\beta_1=0,\gamma_1=\frac{h}{2}T^{-1}\varphi_n^0$$

is considered. Matrices $T,\lambda_i,i=1,...,6;a,b$ are defined by (19) and (24) and are considered for the boundary condition $u_x(t,0)=0$. Approximating boundary condition $u(t,\pi)=0$, the following formulas

$$\begin{cases}U_{M-2}=\alpha_{M-1}U_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-1},\\U_{M-3}=\alpha_{M-2}U_{M-2}+\beta_{M-2}U_{M-1}+\gamma_{M-2},\\U_{M-3}=4U_{M-2}-5U_{M-1},\end{cases}$$

and

$$U_{M-1}=\left[(\beta_{M-2}+5I)-(4I-\alpha_{M-2})\alpha_{M-1}\right]^{-1}$$

$$\times[(4I-\alpha_{M-2})\gamma_{M-1}-\gamma_{M-2}]$$

are used.

The errors for the approximations are computed by the formula

$$E_M^N=\max_{1\le k\le N-1}\left(\sum_{n=1}^{M-1}\left|u\left(t_k,x_n\right)-U_n^k\right|^2h\right)^{\frac{1}{2}}.$$

Table 1. Error analysis for the approximate solutions of (8).

	N=20, M=400	N=30, M=900	N=40, M=1600
Third order of accuracy difference scheme	0,000211	0,00006181	0,00002605
Fourth order of accuracy difference scheme	0,00009415	0,00001866	0,000005752

Table 2. CPU times for the approximate solutions of (8).

	N=20, M=400	N=30, M=900	N=40, M=1600
Third order of accuracy difference scheme	2.3078	13.5915	68.6596
Fourth order of accuracy difference scheme	2.3473	13.5283	67.7495

Table 3. Error analysis for the approximate solutions of (25).

	N=20, M=400	N=30, M=900	N=40, M=1600
Third order of accuracy difference scheme	0,0004817	0,0002047	0,0001138
Fourth order of accuracy difference scheme	0,00009781	0,00001979	0,00001954

Table 4. CPU times for the approximate solutions of (25).

	N=20, M=400	N=30, M=900	N=40, M=1600
Third order of accuracy difference scheme	2.3031	13.5165	68.2402
Fourth order of accuracy difference scheme	1.7361	13.5241	68.8427

Table 5. Error analysis for the approximate solutions of (26).

	N=20, M=400	N=30, M=900	N=40, M=1600
Third order of accuracy difference scheme	0,0037	0,0011	0,0004602
Fourth order of accuracy difference scheme	0,00009415	0,00001866	0,000005752

Table 6. CPU times for the approximate solutions of (26).

	N=20, M=400	N=30, M=900	N=40, M=1600
Third order of accuracy difference scheme	1.7006	13.4295	68.1728
Fourth order of accuracy difference scheme	1.7401	13.4628	68.0591

Here $u(t_k, x_n)$ represents exact solution and U_n^k represents numerical solution at (t_k, x_n). We denote the third order of accuracy difference scheme (4) as TO and the fourth order of accuracy difference scheme (6) as FO. Errors and the related CPU times are represented in Table 1,3,5 and Table 2,4,6 respectively, for different M and N values. The implementations are carried out by Matlab 7.9.0 software package and obtained by a PC System 64bit, Intel R Core TM i5 CPU, 3.20 GHz, 3.60Hz, 4000Mb of RAM.

The following conclusions can be noted from the tables above for the comparison of the numerical results presented in the tables.

- From Table 1 and Table 2, it can be noticed that approximately the same accuracy is achieved by TO with data error ,N=40, M=1600 and by FO with data error N=30, M=900 in different CPU times; 68.6596s and 13.5283s, respectively. This means the use of the difference scheme FO accelerates the computation with a ratio of more than 68.66/13.5≈5.08 times, that is, FO is considerably faster than TO.
- In Table 3 and Table 4, almost the same accuracy is achieved by TO with error ,N=40, M=1600 and by FO with error N=20, M=400 in different CPU

times; 68.6596s and 13.5283s, respectively, which means that the use of the difference scheme FO accelerates the computation with a ratio of more than 68.24/1.73≈39.44 times, which shows that FO is faster than TO.

- In Table 5 and Table 6, it is noted that approximately similar accuracy is achieved by TO with data error ,N=40, M=1600 and by FO with data error N=20, M=400 in different CPU times; 68.1728s and 1.7401s, respectively. This means that the use of the difference scheme FO accelerates the computation with a ratio of more than 68.17/1.74≈39.17 times, that is, FO is approximately faster than TO.
- It can be concluded from the tables that numerical results become approximately the same for larger N and M values for each difference scheme in the reliable range of the CPU times and this shows that the approximate solutions of problem (8), (25), (26) are accurate.
- In conclusion, the fourth order of accuracy difference scheme is more accurate than the third order of accuracy difference scheme when considering the CPU times and the error levels.

Acknowledgments

I would like to thank Prof. Allaberen Ashyralyev (Near East University, Department of Mathematics) for his helpful suggestions to the improvement of this paper.

References

[1] Day, W. A. (1983). A decreasing property of solutions of parabolic equations with applications to Thermoelasticity. Quart. Appl. Math., 40, 468-475.

[2] Gurevich, P., Jager, W., Skubachevskii, A. (2009). On periodicity of solutions for thermocontrol problems with hysteresis-type switches. SIAM J. Math. Anal., 41, 733-752.

[3] Grigorescu, I., Kang, M. (2001). Brownian motion on the figure eight. J. Theoret. Probab., 15, 817-844.

[4] Ozdemir, N., Avci, D., Iskender, B. B. (2011). Numerical Solutions of Two-Dimensional Space-Time Riesz-Caputo Fractional Diffusion Equation. IJOCTA, 1, 17-26.

[5] Ozdemir, N., Agrawal, O. P., Karadeniz, D., Iskender, B. B. (2009). Fractional optimal control problem of An axis-symmetric diffusion-wave propagation. Phys. Scr. T., 136, 014024, 5 pp.

[6] Gustafson, B., Kreiss, H. O., Oliger, J. (1995). Time dependent problems and difference methods. Wiley, New York.

[7] Ashyralyev, A., Sobolevskii, P. E. (2004). New difference shemes for partial differential equations, operator theory: advances and applications. Birkhäuser., vol 148, Basel, Boston, Berlin.

[8] Sobolevskii, P. C., Chebotaryeva, L. M. (1977). Approximate solution by method of lines of the Cauchy problem for an abstract hyperbolic equations. Izv. Vyssh. Uchebn. Zav. Matematika, 5, 103-116.

[9] Belakroum, Kh, Ashyralyev, A., Guezane-Lakoud, A. (2018). A Note on the Nonlocal Boundary Value Problem for a Third Order Partial Differential Equation. Filomat, 32(3), 801081, 89-98.

[10] Ashyralyev, A., Agirseven, D. (2018). Bounded solutions of nonlinear hyperbolic equations with time delay. Electronic Journal of Differential Equations, 21, 1-15.

[11] Ashyralyev, A., Akturk, S. (2017). A note on positivity of two-dimensional differential operators. Filomat, 31(14), 4651663.

[12] Ashyralyev, A., Beigmohammadi, E.O. (2017). Well-posedness of a fourth order of accuracy difference scheme for Bitsadze-Samarskii-type problem. Numerical Functional Analysis and Optimization, 38(10), 1244-1259.

[13] Lax, P. D., Wendroff, B. (1964). Difference schemes for hyperbolic equations with high order of accuracy. Commun. Pure Appl. Math., 17, 381-398.

[14] Fattorini, H. O. (1985). Second order linear differential equations in Banach spaces. North-Holland Mathematics Studies, vol. 108, North-Holland, Amsterdam, Netherlands.

[15] Krein, S. G. (1966). Linear differential equations in a Banach space. Nauka, Moscow.

[16] Sobolevskii, P. E. (1975). Difference methods for the approximate solution of differential equations. Izdat. Gosud. Univ, Voronezh.

[17] Ashyralyev, A., Sobolevskii, P. E. (2005). Two new approaches for construction of the high order of accuracy difference schemes for hyperbolic differential equations. Discrete Dyn. Nat. Soc., 2, 183-213.

[18] Yildirim, O., Uzun, M. (2015). On the numerical solutions of high order stable difference schemes for the hyperbolic multipoint nonlocal boundary value problems. Applied Mathematics and Computation, 254, 210-218.

[19] Yildirim, O., Uzun, M. (2015). On third order stable difference scheme for hyperbolic multipoint nonlocal boundary value problem. Discrete Dyn. Nat. Soc., 2015, 16 pages.

[20] Yildirim O., Uzun M. (2017). On fourth order stable difference scheme for hyperbolic multipoint NBVP. Numerical Functional Analysis and Optimization, 38(10), 1305-1324.

[21] Ashyralyyev, C. (2014). High order approximation of the inverse elliptic problem with Dirichlet-Neumann Conditions. Filomat, 28(5), 94762.

[22] Ashyralyyev, C. (2014). High order of accuracy difference schemes for the inverse elliptic problem with Dirichlet condition. Bound. Value Probl., 2014:5, 13.

[23] Ashyralyev, A., Sobolevskii, P. E. (2001). A note on the difference schemes for hyperbolic equations. Abstr. Appl. Anal., 6, 63-70.

[24] Ashyralyev, A., Yildirim, O. (2010). On multipoint nonlocal boundary value problems for hyperbolic differential and difference equations. Taiwanese J. Math., 14, 165-194.

[25] Direk, Z., Ashyraliyev, M. (2014). FDM for the integral-differential equation of the hyperbolic type. Adv. Differ. Equations, 2014, 1-8.

[26] Piskarev, S., Shaw, Y. (1997). On certain operator families related to cosine operator function. Taiwanese J. Math., 1, 3585-3592.

[27] Yildirim, O., Uzun, M. (2016). On stability of difference schemes for hyperbolic multipoint NBVP with Neumann conditions. AIP Conf. Proc., 1759, Almaty, Kazakhstan.

Ozgur Yildirim *received the Ph.D degree in Applied Mathematics from the Uludag University. He is currently an Associate Professor with Department of Mathematics, Yildiz Technical University, Turkey. His research interests include Existence, Uniqueness, and Stability of Partial Differential Equations in particular Hyperbolic equations, Stability of Difference Schemes, Operator Theory, and Numerical Methods.*

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications
ISSN:2146-0957 eISSN:2146-5703
Vol.9, No.1, pp.73-81 (2019)
http://doi.org/10.11121/ijocta.01.2019.00574

RESEARCH ARTICLE

Fractional Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for functions whose derivatives are extended s-(α, m)-preinvex

Badreddine Meftah[a*] and Abdourazek Souahi[b]

[a] *Laboratoire des télécommunications, Faculté des Sciences et de la Technologie, University of 8 May 1945 Guelma, Guelma, Algeria*
[b] *Laboratory of Advanced Materials, University of Badji Mokhtar-Annaba, Annaba, Algeria*
badrimeftah@yahoo.fr, arsouahi@yahoo.fr

ARTICLE INFO

Article History:
Received 06 January 2018
Accepted 03 January 2019
Available 31 January 2019

Keywords:
Integral inequality
Extended s-(α, m)-preinvex functions
Hölder inequality

AMS Classification 2010:
26D15, 26D20, 26A51

ABSTRACT

In this paper, we introduce the class of extended s-(α, m)-preinvex functions. We establish a new fractional integral identity and derive some new fractional Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for functions whose derivatives are in this novel class of function.

1. Introduction

It is well known that convexity plays an important and central role in many areas, such as economic, finance, optimization, and game theory. Due to its diverse applications this concept has been extended and generalized in several directions.

One of the most well-known inequalities in mathematics for convex functions is the so called Hermite-Hadamard integral inequality

$$f\left(\tfrac{a+b}{2}\right) \le \tfrac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)dx \le \tfrac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}, \qquad (1)$$

where f is a real continuous convex function on the finite interval $[a, b]$. If the function f is concave, then (1) holds in the reverse direction (see [1]).

The above double inequality has attracted many researchers, various generalizations, refinements, extensions and variants have appeared in the literature, see [2–9] and references cited therein.

Kirmaci et al. [10] presented some results connected with inequality (1)

$$\left| \tfrac{1}{b-a}\int_a^b f(x)dx - f\left(\tfrac{a+b}{2}\right) \right| \le \tfrac{b-a}{8}\left(\left|f'(a)\right| + \left|f'(b)\right|\right).$$

Recently, Sarikaya et al [11], gave the fractional analogue of (1)

$$f\left(\tfrac{a+b}{2}\right) \le \tfrac{\Gamma(\alpha+1)}{2(b-a)^\alpha}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^\alpha f\right)(b) + \left(J_{b^-}^\alpha f\right)(a)\right] \le \tfrac{f(a)+f(b)}{2}. \qquad (2)$$

Zhu et al [12] established the following result connected with inequality (2).

$$\left| \tfrac{\Gamma(\alpha+1)}{2(b-a)^\alpha}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^\alpha f\right)(b) + \left(J_{b^-}^\alpha f\right)(a)\right] - f\left(\tfrac{a+b}{2}\right) \right| \le \tfrac{b-a}{4(1+\alpha)}\left(\left|f'(a)\right| + \left|f'(b)\right|\right)\left(\alpha + 3 - \frac{1}{2^{\alpha-1}}\right).$$

*Corresponding Author

Motivated by the above results, in this paper, we introduce the class of extended s-(α, m)-preinvex functions. We establish a new fractional integral identity and derive some new fractional Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for functions whose derivatives are in this novel class of functions.

2. Preliminaries

In this section we recall some definitions and lemmas

Definition 1. *[13] A function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be convex, if*

$$f\left(tx + (1-t)\,y\right) \leq tf\left(x\right) + (1-t)\,f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 2. *[14] A nonnegative function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be P-convex, if*

$$f\left(tx + (1-t)\,y\right) \leq f\left(x\right) + f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 3. *[15] A nonnegative function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be Godunova-Levin function, if*

$$f\left(tx + (1-t)\,y\right) \leq \frac{f\left(x\right)}{t} + \frac{f(y)}{1-t}$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in (0,1)$.

Definition 4. *[16] A nonnegative function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be s-Godunova-Levin function, where $s \in [0,1]$, if*

$$f\left(tx + (1-t)\,y\right) \leq \frac{f\left(x\right)}{t^s} + \frac{f(y)}{(1-t)^s}$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in (0,1)$.

Definition 5. *[17] A nonnegative function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be α-Godunova-Levin function, where $\alpha \in (0,1]$, if*

$$f\left(tx + (1-t)\,y\right) \leq \frac{f\left(x\right)}{t^\alpha} + \frac{f(y)}{1-t^\alpha}$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in (0,1)$.

Definition 6. *[18] A nonnegative function $f : I \subset [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be α-convex in the first sense for some fixed $\alpha \in (0,1]$, if*

$$f(tx + (1-t)y) \ \leq t^\alpha f(x) + (1-t^\alpha)f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 7. *[19] A nonnegative function $f : I \subset [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be s-convex in the second sense for some fixed $s \in (0,1]$, if*

$$f(tx + (1-t)y) \ \leq t^s f(x) + (1-t)^s f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 8. *[20] A nonnegative function $f : I \subset [0,\infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be extended s-convex for some fixed $s \in [-1,1]$, if*

$$f(tx + (1-t)y) \ \leq t^s f(x) + (1-t)^s f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and $t \in (0,1)$.

Definition 9. *[21] A function $f : [0,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be m-convex, where $m \in (0,1]$,if*

$$f\left(tx + m\,(1-t)\,y\right) \leq tf\left(x\right) + m\,(1-t)\,f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$, and $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 10. *[22] A function $f : [0,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be (α, m)-convex, where $\alpha, m \in (0,1]$,if*

$$f\left(tx + m\,(1-t)\,y\right) \leq t^\alpha f\left(x\right) + m\left(1-t^\alpha\right) f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$, and $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 11. *[23] A function $f : [0,b] \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be (s,m)-convex, where $\alpha, m \in (0,1]$,if*

$$f\left(tx + m\,(1-t)\,y\right) \leq t^s f\left(x\right) + m\,(1-t)^s\, f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$, and $t \in [0,1]$.

Definition 12. *[24] A function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be (α, m)-Godunova-Levin functions of first kind, where $\alpha, m \in (0,1]$, if*

$$f\left(tx + m\,(1-t)\,y\right) \leq \frac{f\left(x\right)}{t^\alpha} + m\frac{f(y)}{1-t^\alpha}$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in (0,1)$.

Definition 13. *[24] A function $f : I \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be (s,m)-Godunova-Levin functions of first kind, where $s \in [0,1]$ and $m \in (0,1]$, if*

$$f\left(tx + m\,(1-t)\,y\right) \leq \frac{f\left(x\right)}{t^s} + m\frac{f(y)}{(1-t)^s}$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and all $t \in (0,1)$.

Definition 14. *[25] A nonnegative function $f : I \subset [0, \infty) \to [0, \infty)$ is said to be s-(α, m)-convex in the second sense where $\alpha, m \in [0, 1]$ and $s \in (0, 1]$, if the following inequality*

$$f(tx + (1-t)y) \leq (1-t^{\alpha})^s f(x) + m(t^{\alpha})^s f(\frac{y}{m})$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 15. *[26] A set $K \subseteq \mathbb{R}^n$ is said an invex with respect to the bifunction $\eta : K \times K \to \mathbb{R}^n$, if for all $x, y \in K$, we have*

$$x + t\eta(y, x) \in K.$$

In what follows we assume that $K \subseteq \mathbb{R}$ be an invex set with respect to the bifunction $\eta : K \times K \to \mathbb{R}$.

Definition 16. *[26] A function $f : K \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be preinvex with respect to η, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq (1-t) f(x) + tf(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$ and all $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 17. *[27] A nonnegative function $f : K \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be P-preinvex function with respect to η, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq f(x) + f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$ and all $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 18. *[27] A nonnegative function $f : K \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be Godunova-Levin preinvex function with respect to η, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq \frac{f(x)}{t} + \frac{f(y)}{1-t}$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$ and all $t \in (0, 1)$.

Definition 19. *[28] A nonnegative function $f : K \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be s-Godunova-Levin preinvex function with respect to η, where $s \in [0, 1]$, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq \frac{f(x)}{t^s} + \frac{f(y)}{(1-t)^s}$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$ and all $t \in (0, 1)$.

Definition 20. *[29] A nonnegative function $f : K \subset [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be α-preivex in the first sense with respect to η for some fixed $\alpha \in (0, 1]$, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq (1-t^{\alpha}) f(x) + t^{\alpha} f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$ and $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 21. *[30] A nonnegative function $f : K \subset [0, \infty) \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be s-preinvex in the second sense with respect to η for some fixed $s \in (0, 1]$, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq (1-t)^s f(x) + t^s f(y)$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$ and $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 22. *[31] A function $f : K \subset [0, b^*] \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be m-preinvex with respect to η where $b^* > 0$ and $m \in (0, 1]$, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq (1-t) f(x) + mtf(\frac{y}{m})$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$, and $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 23. *[31] A function $f : K \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be (α, m)-preinvex with respect to η for some fixed $\alpha \in (0, 1]$, and $m \in (0, 1]$, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq (1-t^{\alpha}) f(x) + mt^{\alpha} f(\frac{y}{m})$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$, and $t \in [0, 1]$.

Definition 24. *[32] A function $f : K \subset [0, b^*] \to \mathbb{R}$ is said to be (s, m)-preinvex with respect to η for some fixed $\alpha \in (0, 1]$where $b^* > 0$ and $m \in (0, 1]$, if*

$$f(x + t\eta(y, x)) \leq (1-t)^s f(x) + mt^s f(\frac{y}{m})$$

holds for all $x, y \in K$, and $t \in [0, 1]$.

Lemma 1. *[33] For $t, n \in [0, 1]$, we have*

$$(1-t)^n \leq 2^{1-n} - t^n.$$

Lemma 2. *[34] For any $0 \leq a < b$ and fixed $p \geq 1$, we have*

$$(b-a)^p \leq b^p - a^p.$$

We also recall that the incomplete beta function is defined as follows:

$$B_x(\alpha, \beta) = \int_0^x t^{\alpha-1}(1-t)^{\beta-1} dx$$

for $x \in [0,1]$ and $\alpha,\beta > 0$, where $B_1(\alpha,\beta) = B(\alpha,\beta)$ is the beta function.

3. Main results

In what follows we assume that $[a, a+\eta(b,a)] \subset K \subset [0, b^*]$ where $b^* > 0$ such that K is an invex set with respect to the bifunction $\eta : K \times K \to \mathbb{R}$.

Definition 25. *A nonnegative function $f : K \to [0,\infty)$ is said to be extended s-(α,m)-preinvex in the second sense where $\alpha, m \in (0,1]$ and $s \in [-1,1]$, if the following inequality*

$$f(x + t\eta(y,x)) \leq (1-t^\alpha)^s f(x) + m(t^\alpha)^s f(\frac{y}{m})$$

holds for all $x, y \in I$ and $t \in [0,1]$.

Remark 1. *Definition 25 includes all the definitions cited above, except for Definition 15.*

Lemma 3. *Let $f : [a, a+\eta(b,a)] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a differentiable mapping on $(a, a+\eta(b,a))$ with $\eta(b,a) > 0$, and assume that $f' \in L([a, a+\eta(b,a)])$, then the following equality holds*

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^\delta(b,a)}\left[\left(J^\delta_{a^+}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a)) + \left(J^\delta_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}f\right)(a)\right] - f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right) \quad (3)\\ =& \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\int_0^1 kf'(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt - \int_0^1\left(t^\delta-(1-t)^\delta\right)f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt\right), \end{aligned}$$

where

$$k = \begin{cases} 1 \text{ if } 0 \leq t < \frac{1}{2}, \\ -1 \text{ if } \frac{1}{2} \leq t < 1. \end{cases} \quad (4)$$

Proof. Let

$$\begin{aligned} I &= \int_0^1 kf'(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt - \int_0^1\left(t^\delta-(1-t)^\delta\right)f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt \\ &= I_1 - I_2, \end{aligned} \quad (5)$$

where

$$I_1 = \int_0^1 kf'(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt, \quad (6)$$

and

$$I_2 = \int_0^1\left(t^\delta-(1-t)^\delta\right)f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt, \quad (7)$$

k is defined by (3).
Clearly,

$$\begin{aligned} I_1 &= \frac{2}{\eta(b,a)}\left[f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right) - (f(a) + f(a+\eta(b,a)))\right]. \end{aligned} \quad (8)$$

Now, by integration by parts, I_2 gives

$$\begin{aligned} I_2 =& \tfrac{1}{\eta(b,a)}f(a+\eta(b,a)) + \tfrac{1}{\eta(b,a)}f(a) \\ &- \tfrac{\delta}{\eta(b,a)}\left(\int_0^1 t^{\delta-1}f(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt + \int_0^1(1-t)^{\delta-1}f(a+t\eta(b,a))\,dt\right) \\ =& \tfrac{1}{\eta(b,a)}f(a+\eta(b,a)) + \tfrac{1}{\eta(b,a)}f(a) \\ &- \tfrac{\alpha}{\eta^{\delta+1}(b,a)}\left(\int_a^{a+\eta(a,b)}(u-a)^{\delta-1}f(u)\,du + \int_a^{a+\eta(a,b)}(\eta(b,a)+a-u)^{\delta-1}f(u)\,du\right) \\ =& \tfrac{1}{\eta(b,a)}f(a+\eta(b,a)) + \tfrac{1}{\eta(b,a)}f(a) \\ &- \tfrac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{\eta^{\delta+1}(b,a)}\left(\left(I^\delta_{a^+}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a)) + \left(I^\delta_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}f\right)(a)\right). \end{aligned} \quad (9)$$

Combining (8), (9) and (5), we obtain the desired equality in (3). □

Theorem 1. *Let $f : [a, a+\eta(b,a)] \to \mathbb{R}$ be a positive differentiable mapping on $(a, a+\eta(b,a))$ with $\eta(b,a) > 0$ and $f' \in L([a, a+\eta(b,a)])$. If $|f'|$ is extended s-(α,m)-preinvex function where $\alpha, m \in (0,1]$ and $s \in (-1,1]$, then the following fractional inequality holds for $\alpha s + \delta \neq -1$*

$$\left|\frac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\delta}(b,a)}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^{\delta}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a))+\left(J_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}^{\delta}f\right)(a)\right]-f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|$$
$$\leq \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(2^{1-s}-\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+1}+\tfrac{2^{2-s}}{\delta+1}\left(1-\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^{\delta}\right)-\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+\delta+1}-B(\alpha s+1,\delta+1)\right)|f'(a)|$$
$$+m\left(\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+1}+2B_{\frac{1}{2}}(\alpha s+1,\delta+1)-B(\alpha s+1,\delta+1)+\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+\delta+1}\left(1-\tfrac{1}{2^{\alpha s+\delta}}\right)\right)\left|f'\left(\tfrac{b}{m}\right)\right|,$$

where $B(.,.)$ and $B_{\frac{1}{2}}(.,.)$ are the beta and the incomplete beta functions respectively.

Proof. From Lemma 3, and properties of modulus we have

$$\left|\frac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\delta}(b,a)}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^{\delta}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a))+\left(J_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}^{\delta}f\right)(a)\right]-f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|$$
$$\leq \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\int_0^1 |f'(ta+(1-t)b)|\,dt+\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left((1-t)^{\delta}-t^{\delta}\right)|f'(ta+(1-t)b)|\,dt+\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left(t^{\delta}-(1-t)^{\delta}\right)|f'(ta+(1-t)b)|\,dt\right). \tag{10}$$

Since $|f'|$ is extended s-(α,m)-preinvex function, (10) gives

$$\left|\frac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\delta}(b,a)}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^{\delta}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a))+\left(J_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}^{\delta}f\right)(a)\right]-f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|$$
$$\leq \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\int_0^1 (1-t^{\alpha})^s\times|f'(a)|+m(t^{\alpha})^s\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|dt\right.$$
$$+\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left((1-t)^{\delta}-t^{\delta}\right)\left((1-t^{\alpha})^s|f'(a)|+mt^{\alpha s}\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|\right)dt$$
$$\left.+\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left(t^{\delta}-(1-t)^{\delta}\right)\left((1-t^{\alpha})^s|f'(a)|+mt^{\alpha s}\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|\right)dt\right). \tag{11}$$

Now, applying Lemma 1 for (11), we get

$$\left|\frac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\delta}(b,a)}\left[\left(J_{a^+}^{\delta}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a))+\left(J_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}^{\delta}f\right)(a)\right]-f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|$$
$$\leq \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left(\left(\int_0^1\left(2^{1-s}-t^{\alpha s}\right)dt+\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(2^{1-s}\left((1-t)^{\delta}-t^{\delta}\right)\times\left(t^{\alpha s+\delta}-t^{\alpha s}(1-t)^{\delta}\right)\right)dt\right.\right.\right.$$
$$\left.\left.+\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left(2^{1-s}\left(t^{\delta}-(1-t)^{\delta}\right)-t^{\alpha s+\delta}-t^{\alpha s}(1-t)^{\delta}\right)dt\right)|f'(a)|$$
$$\left.+m\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left(t^{\alpha s}(1-t)^{\delta}-t^{\alpha s+\delta}\right)dt+\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left(t^{\alpha s+\delta}-t^{\alpha s}(1-t)^{\delta}\right)dt+\int_0^1 t^{\alpha s}dt\right)\right)\left|f'\left(\tfrac{b}{m}\right)\right|$$
$$=\frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left(2^{1-s}-\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+1}+\tfrac{2^{2-s}}{\delta+1}\left(1-\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^{\delta}\right)-\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+\delta+1}-B(\alpha s+1,\delta+1)\right)|f'(a)|\right.$$
$$\left.+m\left(\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+1}+2B_{\frac{1}{2}}(\alpha s+1,\delta+1)-B(\alpha s+1,\delta+1)\times\tfrac{1}{\alpha s+\delta+1}\left(1-\tfrac{1}{2^{\alpha s+\delta}}\right)\right)\left|f'\left(\tfrac{b}{m}\right)\right|\right),$$

which is the desired result. □

Remark 2. *Theorem 1 will be reduces to Theorem 2.3 from [12], if we choose $s=\alpha=m=1$ and $\eta(b,a)=b-a$.*

Theorem 2. *Let $f:[a,a+\eta(b,a)]\to\mathbb{R}$ be a positive differentiable mapping on $(a,a+\eta(b,a))$ with $\eta(b,a)>0$ and $f'\in L([a,a+\eta(b,a)])$. If $|f'|^q$ $q>1$ with $\frac{1}{p}+\frac{1}{q}=1$, is extended s-(α,m)-preinvex function, where $\alpha,m\in(0,1]$ and $s\in[-1,1]$, and $q>1$, then the following fractional inequality holds for $s\alpha\neq-1$*

$$\begin{aligned}&\left|\tfrac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\alpha}(b,a)}\left[\left(J^{\delta}_{a^+}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a))\right.\right.\\&\left.\left.+\left(J^{\delta}_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}f\right)(a)\right]-f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|\\\leq\;&\tfrac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left((2^{1-s}-\tfrac{1}{s\alpha+1})\left|f'(a)\right|^q\right.\right.\\&\left.+\tfrac{m}{s\alpha+1}\left|f'\left(\tfrac{b}{m}\right)\right|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\\&+\left(\tfrac{1}{\delta p+1}\left(1-\left(\tfrac{1}{2}\right)^{\delta p}\right)\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\\&\times\left(\left(\left(\tfrac{1}{2^s}-\tfrac{1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\right)\left|f'(a)\right|^q\right.\right.\\&\left.+\tfrac{m}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\left|f'\left(\tfrac{b}{m}\right)\right|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\\&\times\left(\left(\tfrac{1}{2^s}-\tfrac{2^{s\alpha+1}-1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\right)\left|f'(a)\right|^q\right.\\&\left.\left.\left.+\;m\tfrac{2^{s\alpha+1}-1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\left|f'\left(\tfrac{b}{m}\right)\right|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)\right).\end{aligned}$$

Proof. From Lemma 3, properties of modulus, Hölder inequality, and Lemma 2, we have

$$\begin{aligned}&\left|\tfrac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\delta}(b,a)}\left[\left(J^{\delta}_{a^+}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a))\right.\right.\\&\left.\left.+\left(J^{\delta}_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}f\right)(a)\right]-f\left(\tfrac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|\\\leq\;&\tfrac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left(\int_0^1dt\right)^{1-\frac{1}{q}}\right.\\&\times\left(\int_0^1\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\\&+\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left((1-t)^{\delta}-t^{\delta}\right)^pdt\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\\&\times\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\\&+\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left((1-t)^{\delta}-t^{\delta}\right)^pdt\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\\&\left.\times\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)\\\leq\;&\tfrac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left(\int_0^1\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right.\\&+\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left((1-t)^{\delta p}-t^{\delta p}\right)dt\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\\&\times\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\\&+\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left(t^{\delta p}-(1-t)^{\delta p}\right)dt\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\\&\left.\times\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)\\=\;&\tfrac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left(\int_0^1\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right.\\&+\left(\tfrac{1}{\delta p+1}\left(1-\tfrac{1}{2^{\delta p}}\right)\right)^{\frac{1}{p}}\\&\times\left(\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}}\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right.\\&\left.\left.+\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1\left|f'(a+t\eta(b,a))\right|^qdt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)\right).\end{aligned}$$

Using the fact that $|f'|^q$ is extended s-preinvex function, and Lemma 1, (3) gives

$$\left|\frac{\Gamma(\delta+1)}{2\eta^{\alpha}(b,a)}\left[\left(J^{\delta}_{a^+}f\right)(a+\eta(b,a)) + \left(J^{\delta}_{(a+\eta(b,a))^-}f\right)(a)\right] - f\left(\frac{2a+\eta(b,a)}{2}\right)\right|$$

$$\leq \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left(\int_0^1 (2^{1-s}-t^{s\alpha})\left|f'(a)\right|^q + m\left(t^{s\alpha}\right)\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|^q dt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} + \left(\frac{1}{\delta p+1}\left(1-\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\delta p}\right)\right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \times\left(\left(\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}} (2^{1-s}-t^{s\alpha})\left|f'(a)\right|^q + m\left(t^{s\alpha}\right)\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|^q dt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \times\left(\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1 (2^{1-s}-t^{s\alpha})\left|f'(a)\right|^q + m\left(t^{s\alpha}\right)\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|^q dt\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)\right)$$

$$= \frac{\eta(b,a)}{2}\left(\left((2^{1-s}-\frac{1}{s\alpha+1})\left|f'(a)\right|^q + m\frac{1}{s\alpha+1}\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} + \left(\frac{1}{\delta p+1}\left(1-\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{\delta p}\right)\right)^{\frac{1}{p}} \times\left(\left(\left(\frac{1}{2^s}-\frac{1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\right)\left|f'(a)\right|^q + m\left(\frac{1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\right)\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}} \times\left(\left(\frac{1}{2^s}-\frac{2^{s\alpha+1}-1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\right)\left|f'(a)\right|^q + m\left(\frac{2^{s\alpha+1}-1}{(s\alpha+1)2^{s\alpha+1}}\right)\left|f'(\frac{b}{m})\right|^q\right)^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)\right)$$

which is the desired result. □

References

[1] Mitrinović, D.S., Pečarić, J.E. and Fink, A.M. (1993). Classical and new inequalities in analysis. Mathematics and its Applications (East European Series), 61. Kluwer Academic Publishers Group, Dordrecht.

[2] Khan, M.A., Khurshid, Y., Ali, T. and Rehman, N. (2018). Inequalities for Hermite-Hadamard type with applications, Punjab Univ. J. Math. (Lahore), 50(3), 1–12.

[3] Chu, Y.M., Khan, M.A., Khan, T.U. and Ali, T. (2016). Generalizations of Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities for MT-convex functions, J. Nonlinear Sci. Appl. 9(6), 4305–4316.

[4] Set, E., Karataş, S.S. and Khan, M.A. (2016). Hermite-Hadamard type inequalities obtained via fractional integral for differentiable m-convex and (α, m)-convex functions, Int. J. Anal. 2016, Art. ID 4765691, 8 pp.

[5] Chu, Y.M., Khan, M.A., Ali, T. and Dragomir, S.S. (2017). Inequalities for α-fractional differentiable functions, J. Inequal. Appl. 2017, Paper No. 93, 12 pp.

[6] Khan, M.A., Ali, T. and Dragomir, S.S. (2018). Hermite–Hadamard type inequalities for conformable fractional integrals, Rev. R. Acad. Cienc. Exactas Fís. Nat. Ser. A Math. RACSAM, 112(4), 1033–1048.

[7] Khan, M.A., Khurshid, Y. and Ali, T. (2017). Hermite-Hadamard inequality for fractional integrals via η-convex functions, Acta Math. Univ. Comenian. (N.S.), 86(1), 153–164.

[8] Khan, M.A., Chu, Y.M., Khan, T.U. and Khan, J. (2017). Some new inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for s-convex functions with applications, Open Math., 15, 1414–1430.

[9] Khan, M.A., Khurshid, Y., Ali, T. and Rehman, N. (2016). Inequalities for three times differentiable functions, Punjab Univ. J. Math. (Lahore), 46(2), 35–48.

[10] Kirmaci, U.S. and Özdemir, M.E. (2004). Some inequalities for mappings whose derivatives are bounded and applications to special means of real numbers. Appl. Math. Lett., 17(6), 641–645.

[11] Sarikaya, M.Z., Set, E., Yaldiz, H. and Başak, N. (2013). Hermite–Hadamard's inequalities for fractional integrals and related fractional inequalities. Mathematical and Computer Modelling. 57(9), 2403-2407.

[12] Zhu, C., Fečkan, M. and Wang, J. (2012). Fractional integral inequalities for differentiable convex mappings and applications to special means and a midpoint formula. J. Appl. Math. Stat. Inf. 8(2), 21-28.

[13] Pečarić, J.E., Proschan, F. and Tong, Y.L. (1992). Convex functions, partial orderings, and statistical applications. Mathematics in Science and Engineering. 187. Academic Press, Inc., Boston, MA.

[14] Dragomir, S.S., Pečarić, J.E. and Persson, L.E. (1995). Some inequalities of Hadamard type. Soochow J. Math. 21(3), 335–341.

[15] Godunova, E.K. and Levin, V.I. (1985). Inequalities for functions of a broad class that contains convex, monotone and some other forms of functions. (Russian) Numerical mathematics and mathematical physics (Russian), 138–142, 166, Moskov. Gos. Ped. Inst., Moscow.

[16] Dragomir, S.S. (2015). Inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for h-convex functions on linear spaces. Proyecciones 34(4), 323–341.

[17] Noor, M.A., Noor, K.I., Awan, M.U. and Khan, S. (2014). Fractional Hermite-Hadamard inequalities for some new classes of Godunova-Levin functions. Appl. Math. Inf. Sci., 8(6), 2865–2872.

[18] Orlicz, W. (1961). A note on modular spaces. I. Bull. Acad. Polon. Sci. Math. Astronom. Phys. 9, 157–162.

[19] Breckner, W.W. (1978). Stetigkeitsaussagen für eine Klasse verallgemeinerter konvexer Funktionen in topologischen linearen Räumen. (German) Publ. Inst. Math. (Beograd) (N.S.) 23(37), 13–20.

[20] Xi, B-Y. and Qi, F. (2015). Inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for extended s-convex functions and applications to means. J. Nonlinear Convex Anal. 16(5), 873–890.

[21] Toader, G. (1985). Some generalizations of the convexity. Proceedings of the colloquium on approximation and optimization (Cluj-Napoca, 1985), 329–338, Univ. Cluj-Napoca, Cluj-Napoca.

[22] Mihesan, V.G. (1993). A generalization of the convexity, Seminar on Functional Equations, Approx. Convex, Cluj-Napoca, Vol. 1., Romania.

[23] Eftekhari, N. (2014). Some remarks on (s, m)-convexity in the second sense. J. Math. Inequal. 8(3), 489–495.

[24] Noor, M.A., Noor, K.I. and Awan, M.U. (2015). Fractional Ostrowski inequalities for (s, m)-Godunova-Levin functions. Facta Univ. Ser. Math. Inform. 30(4), 489–499.

[25] Muddassar, M., Bhatti, M.I. and Irshad, W. (2013). Generalisations of integral inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type through convexity. Bull. Aust. Math. Soc. 88(2), 320–330.

[26] Weir, T. and Mond, B. (1988). Pre-invex functions in multiple objective optimization. J. Math. Anal. Appl., 136(1), 29–38.

[27] Noor, M.A., Noor, K.I., Awan, M.U. and Li, J. (2014) On Hermite-Hadamard inequalities for h-preinvex functions. Filomat, 28(7), 1463-1474.

[28] Noor, M.A., Noor, K.I., Awan, M.U. and Khan, S. (2014). Hermite-Hadamard inequalities for s-Godunova-Levin preinvex functions. J. Adv. Math. Stud., 7(2), 12-19.

[29] Wang, Y., Zheng, M-M. and Qi, F. (2014).Integral inequalities of Hermite-Hadamard type for functions whose derivatives are α-preinvex. J. Inequal. Appl. 2014, 2014:97, 10 pp.

[30] Li, J-H. (2010). On Hadamard-type inequalities for s-preinvex functions. Journal of Chongqing Normal University (Natural Science), 27(4), p. 003.

[31] Latif, M.A. and Shoaib, M. (2015). Hermite-Hadamard type integral inequalities for differentiable m-preinvex and (α, m)-preinvex functions. J. Egyptian Math. Soc., 23(2), 236–241.

[32] Meftah, B. (2016). Hermite-Hadamard's inequalities for functions whose first derivatives are (s, m)-preinvex in the second sense. JNT, 10, 54–65.

[33] Deng, J. and Wang, J. (2013). Fractional Hermite-Hadamard inequalities for (α, m)-logarithmically convex functions. J. Inequal. Appl., 2013:364, 11 pp.

[34] Park, J. (2015). Hermite-Hadamard-like type inequalities for s-convex function and s-Godunova-Levin functions of two kinds. Int. Math. Forum, 9, 3431-3447.

Badreddine Meftah *is an Assistant Professor in Mathematics at University of 8 mai 1945 Guelma, Algeria. He received his PhD degree of Science in Mathematics from Badji Mokhtar Annaba University, Algeria. His research interests are inequalities, fractional calculus and time scales calculus.*

Abdourazek Souahi *is an Assistant Professor in Mathematics at University of 8 mai 1945 Guelma, Algeria. He received his PhD degree of Science in Mathematics from Badji Mokhtar Annaba University, Algeria. His research interests are inequalities, fractional calculus and time scales calculus.*

INSTRUCTIONS FOR AUTHORS

Aims and Scope

This journal shares the research carried out through different disciplines in regards to optimization, control and their applications.

The basic fields of this journal are linear, nonlinear, stochastic, parametric, discrete and dynamic programming; heuristic algorithms in optimization, control theory, game theory and their applications. Problems such as managerial decisions, time minimization, profit maximizations and other related topics are also shared in this journal.

Besides the research articles expository papers, which are hard to express or model, conference proceedings, book reviews and announcements are also welcome.

Journal Topics

- Applied Mathematics,
- Financial Mathematics,
- Control Theory,
- Game Theory,
- Fractional Calculus,
- Fractional Control,
- Modeling of Bio-systems for Optimization and Control,
- Linear Programming,
- Nonlinear Programming,
- Stochastic Programming,
- Parametric Programming,
- Conic Programming,
- Discrete Programming,
- Dynamic Programming,
- Optimization with Artificial Intelligence,
- Operational Research in Life and Human Sciences,
- Heuristic Algorithms in Optimization,
- Applications Related to Optimization on Engineering.

Submission of Manuscripts

New Submissions

Solicited and contributed manuscripts should be submitted to IJOCTA via the journal's online submission system. You need to make registration prior to submitting a new manuscript (please click here to register and do not forget to define yourself as an "Author" in doing so). You may then click on the "New Submission" link on your User Home.

IMPORTANT: If you already have an account, please click here to login. It is likely that you will have created an account if you have reviewed or authored for the journal in the past.

On the submission page, enter data and answer questions as prompted. Click on the “Next” button on each screen to save your work and advance to the next screen. The names and contact details of at least four internationally recognized experts who can review your manuscript should be entered in the "Comments for the Editor" box.

You will be prompted to upload your files: Click on the “Browse” button and locate the file on your computer. Select the description of the file in the drop down next to the Browse button. When you have selected all files you wish to upload, click the “Upload” button. Review your submission before sending to the Editors. Click the “Submit” button when you are done reviewing. Authors are responsible for verifying all files have uploaded correctly.

You may stop a submission at any phase and save it to submit later. Acknowledgment of receipt of the manuscript by IJOCTA Online Submission System will be sent to the corresponding author, including an assigned manuscript number that should be included in all subsequent correspondence. You can also log-on to submission web page of IJOCTA any time to check the status of your manuscript. You will receive an e-mail once a decision has been made on your manuscript.

Each manuscript must be accompanied by a statement that it has not been published elsewhere and that it has not been submitted simultaneously for publication elsewhere.

Manuscripts can be prepared using LaTeX (.tex) or MSWord (.docx). However, manuscripts with heavy mathematical content will only be accepted as LaTeX files.

Preferred first submission format (for reviewing purpose only) is Portable Document File (.pdf). Please find below the templates for first submission.

Click here to download Word template for first submission (.docx)

Click here to download LaTeX template for first submission (.tex)

Revised Manuscripts

Revised manuscripts should be submitted via IJOCTA online system to ensure that they are linked to the original submission. It is also necessary to attach a separate file in which a point-by-point explanation is given to the specific points/questions raised by the referees and the corresponding changes made in the revised version.

To upload your revised manuscript, please go to your author page and click on the related manuscript title. Navigate to the "Review" link on the top left and scroll down the page. Click on the "Choose File" button under the "Editor Decision" title, choose the revised article (in pdf format) that you want to submit, and click on the "Upload" button to upload the author version. Repeat the same steps to upload the "Responses to Reviewers/Editor" file and make sure that you click the "Upload" button again.

To avoid any delay in making the article available freely online, the authors also need to upload the source files (Word or LaTex) when submitting revised manuscripts. Files can be compressed if necessary. The two-column final submission templates are as follows:

Click here to download Word template for final submission (.docx)

Click here to download LaTeX template for final submission (.tex)

Authors are responsible for obtaining permission to reproduce copyrighted material from other sources and are required to sign an agreement for the transfer of copyright to IJOCTA.

Article Processing Charges

There are no charges for submission and/or publication.

English Editing

Papers must be in English. Both British and American spelling is acceptable, provided usage is consistent within the manuscript. Manuscripts that are written in English that is ambiguous or incomprehensible, in the opinion of the Editor, will be returned to the authors with a request to resubmit once the language issues have been improved. This policy does not imply that all papers must be written in "perfect" English, whatever that may mean. Rather, the criteria require that the intended meaning of the authors must be clearly understandable, i.e., not obscured by language problems, by referees who have agreed to review the paper.

Presentation of Papers

Manuscript style

Use a standard font of the **11-point type: Times New Roman** is preferred. It is necessary to single line space your manuscript. Normally manuscripts are expected not to exceed 25 single-spaced pages including text, tables, figures and bibliography. All illustrations, figures, and tables are placed within the text at the appropriate points, rather than at the end.

During the submission process you must enter: (1) the full title, (2) names and affiliations of all authors and (3) the full address, including email, telephone and fax of the author who is to check the proofs. Supply a brief **biography** of each author at the end of the manuscript after references.

- Include the name(s) of any **sponsor(s)** of the research contained in the paper, along with **grant number(s).**
- Enter an **abstract** of no more than 250 words for all articles.

Keywords

Authors should prepare no more than 5 keywords for their manuscript.

Maximum five **AMS Classification number** (http://www.ams.org/mathscinet/msc/msc2010.html) of the study should be specified after keywords.

Writing Abstract

An abstract is a concise summary of the whole paper, not just the conclusions. The abstract should be no more than 250 words and convey the following:

1. An introduction to the work. This should be accessible by scientists in any field and express the necessity of the experiments executed.
2. Some scientific detail regarding the background to the problem.
3. A summary of the main result.
4. The implications of the result.
5. A broader perspective of the results, once again understandable across scientific disciplines.

It is crucial that the abstract conveys the importance of the work and be understandable without reference to the rest of the manuscript to a multidisciplinary audience. Abstracts should not contain any citation to other published works.

Reference Style

Reference citations in the text should be identified by numbers in square brackets "[ ]". All references must be complete and accurate. Please ensure that every reference cited in the text is also present in the reference list (and vice versa). Online citations should include date of access. References should be listed in the following style:

Journal article

Author, A.A., & Author, B. (Year). Title of article. Title of Journal, Vol(Issue), pages.

Castles, F.G., Curtin, J.C., & Vowles, J. (2006). Public policy in Australia and New Zealand: The new global context. Australian Journal of Political Science, 41(2), 131–143.

Book

Author, A. (Year). Title of book. Publisher, Place of Publication.

Mercer, P.A., & Smith, G. (1993). Private Viewdata in the UK. 2nd ed. Longman, London.

Chapter

Author, A. (Year). Title of chapter. In: A. Editor and B. Editor, eds. Title of book. Publisher, Place of publication, pages.

Bantz, C.R. (1995). Social dimensions of software development. In: J.A. Anderson, ed. Annual review of software management and development. CA: Sage, Newbury Park, 502–510.

Internet document

Author, A. (Year). Title of document [online]. Source. Available from: URL [Accessed (date)].

Holland, M. (2004). Guide to citing Internet sources [online]. Poole, Bournemouth University. Available from: http://www.bournemouth.ac.uk/library/using/guide_to_citing_internet_sourc.html [Accessed 4 November 2004].

Newspaper article

Author, A. (or Title of Newspaper) (Year). Title of article. Title of Newspaper, day Month, page, column.

Independent (1992). Picking up the bills. Independent, 4 June, p. 28a.

Thesis

Author, A. (Year). Title of thesis. Type of thesis (degree). Name of University.

Agutter, A.J. (1995). The linguistic significance of current British slang. PhD Thesis. Edinburgh University.

Illustrations

Illustrations submitted (line drawings, halftones, photos, photomicrographs, etc.) should be clean originals or digital files. Digital files are recommended for highest quality reproduction and should follow these guidelines:

- 300 dpi or higher
- Sized to fit on journal page
- TIFF or JPEG format only
- Embedded in text files and submitted as separate files (if required)

Tables and Figures

Tables and figures (illustrations) should be embedded in the text at the appropriate points, rather than at the end. A short descriptive title should appear above each table with a clear legend and any footnotes suitably identified below.

Proofs

Page proofs are sent to the designated author using IJOCTA EProof system. They must be carefully checked and returned within 48 hours of receipt.

Offprints/Reprints

Each corresponding author of an article will receive a PDF file of the article via email. This file is for personal use only and may not be copied and disseminated in any form without prior written permission from IJOCTA.

Submission Preparation Checklist

As part of the submission process, authors are required to check off their submission's compliance with all of the following items, and submissions may be returned to authors that do not adhere to these guidelines.

1. The submission has not been previously published, nor is it before another journal for consideration (or an explanation has been provided in Comments for the Editor).
2. The submission file is in Portable Document Format (.pdf).
3. The ORCID profile numbers of "all" authors are ready to enter in the step of Article Metadata (visit https://orcid.org for more details).
4. The text is single line spaced; uses a 11-point font; employs italics, rather than underlining (except with URL addresses); and all illustrations, figures, and tables are placed within the text at the appropriate points, rather than at the end.
5. The text adheres to the stylistic and bibliographic requirements outlined in the Author Guidelines, which is found in "About the Journal".
6. Maximum five AMS Classification number (http://www.ams.org/mathscinet/msc/msc2010.html) of the study have been provided after keywords.
7. After the acceptance of manuscript (before copy editing), Word (.docx) or LaTeX (.tex) version of the paper will be presented.
8. The names and email addresses of at least four (4) possible reviewers have been indicated in "Comments for the Editor" box in Paper Submission Step 1. Please note that at least two of the recommendations should be from different countries. Avoid suggesting reviewers who are at arms-length from you or your co-authors. This includes graduate advisors, people in your current department, or any others with a conflict of interest.

Peer Review Process

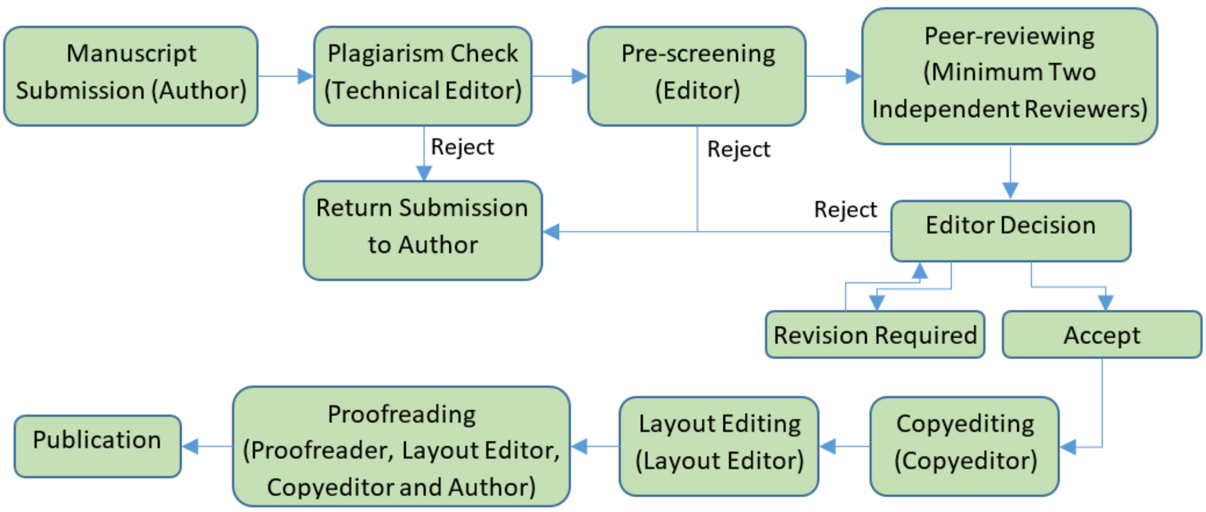
All contributions, prepared according to the author guidelines and submitted via IJOCTA online submission system are evaluated according to the criteria of originality and quality of their scientific content. The corresponding author will receive a confirmation e-mail with a reference number assigned to the paper, which he/she is asked to quote in all subsequent correspondence.

All manuscripts are first checked by the Technical Editor using plagiarism detection software (iThenticate) to verify originality and ensure the quality of the written work. If the result is not satisfactory (i.e. exceeding the limit of 30% of overlapping), the submission is rejected and the author is notified.

After the plagiarism check, the manuscripts are evaluated by the Editor-in-Chief and can be rejected without reviewing if considered not of sufficient interest or novelty, too preliminary or out of the scope of the journal. If the manuscript is considered suitable for further evaluation, it is first sent to the Area Editor. Based on his/her opinion the paper is then sent to at least two independent reviewers. Each reviewer is allowed up to four weeks to return his/her feedback but this duration may be extended based on his/her availability. IJOCTA has instituted a blind peer review process where the reviewers' identities are not known to authors. When the reviews are received, the Area Editor gives a decision and lets the author know it together with the reviewer comments and any supplementary files.

Should the reviews be positive, the authors are expected to submit the revised version usually within two months the editor decision is sent (this period can be extended when the authors contact to the editor and let him/her know that they need extra time for resubmission). If a revised paper is not resubmitted within the deadline, it is considered as a new submission after all the changes requested by reviewers have been made. Authors are required to submit a new cover letter, a response to reviewers letter and the revised manuscript (which ideally shows the revisions made in a different color or highlighted). If a change in authorship (addition or removal of author) has occurred during the revision, authors are requested to clarify the reason for change, and all authors (including the removed/added ones) need to submit a written consent for the change. The revised version is evaluated by the Area editor and/or reviewers and the Editor-in-Chief brings a decision about final acceptance based on their suggestions. If necessary, further revision can be asked for to fulfil all the requirements of the reviewers.

When a manuscript is accepted for publication, an acceptance letter is sent to the corresponding author and the authors are asked to submit the source file of the manuscript conforming to the IJOCTA two-column final submission template. After that stage, changes of authors of the manuscript are not possible. The manuscript is sent to the Copyeditor and a linguistic, metrological and technical revision is made, at which stage the authors are asked to make the final corrections in no more than a week. The layout editor prepares the galleys and the authors receive the galley proof for final check before printing. The authors are expected to correct only typographical errors on the proofs and return the proofs within 48 hours. After the final check by the layout editor and the proofreader, the manuscript is assigned a DOI number, made publicly available and listed in the forthcoming journal issue. After printing the issue, the corresponding metadata and files published in this issue are sent to the databases for indexing.



Publication Ethics and Malpractice Statement

IJOCTA is committed to ensuring ethics in publication and quality of articles. Conforming to standards of expected ethical behavior is therefore necessary for all parties (the author, the editor(s), the peer reviewer) involved in the act of publishing.

International Standards for Editors

The editors of the IJOCTA are responsible for deciding which of the articles submitted to the journal should be published considering their intellectual content without regard to race, gender, sexual orientation, religious belief, ethnic origin, citizenship, or political philosophy of the authors. The editors may be guided by the policies of the journal's editorial board and constrained by such legal requirements as shall then be in force regarding libel, copyright infringement and plagiarism. The editors may confer with other editors or reviewers in making this decision. As guardians and stewards of the research record, editors should encourage authors to strive for, and adhere themselves to, the highest standards of publication ethics. Furthermore, editors are in a unique position to indirectly foster responsible conduct of research through their policies and processes.

To achieve the maximum effect within the research community, ideally all editors should adhere to universal standards and good practices.

- Editors are accountable and should take responsibility for everything they publish.
- Editors should make fair and unbiased decisions independent from commercial consideration and ensure a fair and appropriate peer review process.
- Editors should adopt editorial policies that encourage maximum transparency and complete, honest reporting.
- Editors should guard the integrity of the published record by issuing corrections and retractions when needed and pursuing suspected or alleged research and publication misconduct.
- Editors should pursue reviewer and editorial misconduct.
- Editors should critically assess the ethical conduct of studies in humans and animals.
- Peer reviewers and authors should be told what is expected of them.
- Editors should have appropriate policies in place for handling editorial conflicts of interest.

Reference:

Kleinert S & Wager E (2011). Responsible research publication: international standards for editors. A position statement developed at the 2nd World Conference on Research Integrity, Singapore, July 22-24, 2010. Chapter 51 in: Mayer T & Steneck N (eds) Promoting Research Integrity in a Global Environment. Imperial College Press / World Scientific Publishing, Singapore (pp 317-28). (ISBN 978-981-4340-97-7) [Link].

International Standards for Authors

Publication is the final stage of research and therefore a responsibility for all researchers. Scholarly publications are expected to provide a detailed and permanent record of research. Because publications form the basis for both new research and the application of findings, they can affect not only the research community but also, indirectly, society at large. Researchers therefore have a responsibility to ensure that their publications are honest, clear, accurate, complete and balanced, and should avoid misleading, selective or ambiguous reporting. Journal editors also have responsibilities for ensuring the integrity of the research literature and these are set out in companion guidelines.

- The research being reported should have been conducted in an ethical and responsible manner and should comply with all relevant legislation.
- Researchers should present their results clearly, honestly, and without fabrication, falsification or inappropriate data manipulation.
- Researchers should strive to describe their methods clearly and unambiguously so that their findings can be confirmed by others.
- Researchers should adhere to publication requirements that submitted work is original, is not plagiarised, and has not been published elsewhere.
- Authors should take collective responsibility for submitted and published work.
- The authorship of research publications should accurately reflect individuals’ contributions to the work and its reporting.

- Funding sources and relevant conflicts of interest should be disclosed.
- When an author discovers a significant error or inaccuracy in his/her own published work, it is the author's obligation to promptly notify the journal's Editor-in-Chief and cooperate with them to either retract the paper or to publish an appropriate erratum.

Reference:

Wager E & Kleinert S (2011) Responsible research publication: international standards for authors. A position statement developed at the 2nd World Conference on Research Integrity, Singapore, July 22-24, 2010. Chapter 50 in: Mayer T & Steneck N (eds) Promoting Research Integrity in a Global Environment. Imperial College Press / World Scientific Publishing, Singapore (pp 309-16). (ISBN 978-981-4340-97-7) [Link].

Basic principles to which peer reviewers should adhere

Peer review in all its forms plays an important role in ensuring the integrity of the scholarly record. The process depends to a large extent on trust and requires that everyone involved behaves responsibly and ethically. Peer reviewers play a central and critical part in the peer-review process as the peer review assists the Editors in making editorial decisions and, through the editorial communication with the author, may also assist the author in improving the manuscript.

Peer reviewers should:

- respect the confidentiality of peer review and not reveal any details of a manuscript or its review, during or after the peer-review process, beyond those that are released by the journal;
- not use information obtained during the peer-review process for their own or any other person's or organization's advantage, or to disadvantage or discredit others;
- only agree to review manuscripts for which they have the subject expertise required to carry out a proper assessment and which they can assess within a reasonable time-frame;
- declare all potential conflicting interests, seeking advice from the journal if they are unsure whether something constitutes a relevant conflict;
- not allow their reviews to be influenced by the origins of a manuscript, by the nationality, religion, political beliefs, gender or other characteristics of the authors, or by commercial considerations;
- be objective and constructive in their reviews, refraining from being hostile or inflammatory and from making libellous or derogatory personal comments;
- acknowledge that peer review is largely a reciprocal endeavour and undertake to carry out their fair share of reviewing, in a timely manner;
- provide personal and professional information that is accurate and a true representation of their expertise when creating or updating journal accounts.

Reference:

Homes I (2013). COPE Ethical Guidelines for Peer Reviewers, March 2013, v1 [Link].

Copyright Notice

An International Journal of Optimization and Control: Theories & Applications

Volume: 9 Number: 1
January 2019

CONTENTS

ISSN 2146-0957

www.ijocta.com
info@ijocta.com